



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

EducT  
1518  
85.220



HACHETTE'S SERIES OF FRENCH  
EDUCATIONAL WORKS

The logo is a circular emblem with a decorative border. Inside the circle, the text "HACHETTE'S SERIES OF FRENCH" is written along the top arc, and "EDUCATIONAL WORKS" along the bottom arc. In the center of the circle is a smaller circle containing the letters "H&C". The entire emblem is set within a larger decorative frame that resembles a classical archway.

BLOUET.

Class Book of  
French Composition.

Edue T 1518.85.220

HARVARD COLLEGE  
LIBRARY



THE ESSEX INSTITUTE  
TEXT-BOOK COLLECTION

GIFT OF  
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON  
OF NEW YORK

JANUARY 25, 1924



3 2044 102 773 579



CLASS-BOOK  
OF  
FRENCH COMPOSITION.

## EDUCATIONAL WORKS

BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

---

"CLASS-BOOK OF FRENCH COMPOSITION." By Paul Blouët. 1 vol. small 8vo, cloth 2s. 6d.

"A most valuable guide to the idiomatic rendering of English into French."—*Literary Churchman*.

"This book deserves to take rank with Mr. Sidgwick's 'Greek Composition,' and a higher compliment we cannot pay it."—*Journal of Education*.

"KEY TO THE CLASS-BOOK OF FRENCH COMPOSITION." By Paul Blouët. 1 vol. small 8vo, 2s. 6d. (*For Teachers only.*)

"NEW ETYMOLOGICAL FRENCH GRAMMAR," giving for the first time the history of the French Syntax. By A. Chassang, Lauréat de l'Académie Française. Inspecteur Général de l'Instruction Publique; and Paul Blouët. 1 vol. small 8vo, boards, 5s.

"THE VERB FAIRE AND ITS GALICISMS." By Paul Blouët. 1 vol. small 8vo, cloth 2s.

"LES DEUX SOURDS." A Comedy in One Act. By Jules Moinaux. With Explanatory Notes. Price 9d, cloth 1s.

"This play can be safely placed in the hands of any schoolboy or girl."—*P. B.*

"BIBLE STORIES." Written in Easy French for Beginners. By Mme. Paul Blouët. With Questionnaires and a Complete Vocabulary. By Paul Blouët. Cloth, price 1s. 6d.

# CLASS-BOOK

OF

## FRENCH COMPOSITION.

BY  
PAUL BLOUËT, B.A. (UNIV. GALLIC.),  
OFFICIER D'ACADÉMIE;  
HEAD FRENCH MASTER, ST. PAUL'S SCHOOL;  
EXAMINER AT CHRIST'S HOSPITAL, ETC.

FIFTH EDITION  
**With a Vocabulary.**

LIBRAIRIE HACHETTE ET C<sup>IE</sup>.  
LONDON: 18, KING WILLIAM STREET, CHARING CROSS.  
PARIS: 79, BOULEVARD ST. GERMAIN.  
BOSTON: CARL SCHOENHOF.

—  
1885.

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.



Edue T 1518.851220

LONDON :

PRINTED BY RANKEN AND CO., DRURY HOUSE,  
DRURY COURT STRAND, W.C.

## PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION.

---

THE increasing success of the "Class-Book of French Composition" clearly shows that the method of teaching French Composition, by giving hints to Pupils, instead of giving them whole sentences translated, is being well appreciated.

*November, 1881.*

**HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY**  
GIFT OF  
**GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON**  
**JANUARY 25, 1924**

# CONTENTS.

## PART I.

| NO.                                                       | PAGE. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| 1. Napoléon and Marshal Moncey . . . . .                  | 1     |
| 2. The Marquis de Favères and Samuel Bernard . . . . .    | 2     |
| 3. On Alexandre Dumas . . . . .                           | 2     |
| 4. On the Same . . . . .                                  | 3     |
| 5. Les deux Dumas . . . . .                               | 3     |
| 6. George III. and Sutton . . . . .                       | 4     |
| 7. Charles Fox . . . . .                                  | 4     |
| 8. Zeno and his Servant . . . . .                         | 5     |
| 9. Sheridan's Escape . . . . .                            | 6     |
| 10. On Douglas Jerrold . . . . .                          | 6     |
| 11. Edmund Kean . . . . .                                 | 7     |
| 12. Spohr . . . . .                                       | 7     |
| 13. Korsakof . . . . .                                    | 8     |
| 14. A Miser . . . . .                                     | 9     |
| 15. An Emperor of China . . . . .                         | 10    |
| 16. Frederick the Great . . . . .                         | 10    |
| 17. Louis XIV. and the Burgomaster of Amsterdam . . . . . | 11    |
| 18. The Duke of Choiseul and Charles Townsend . . . . .   | 12    |
| 19. The Tongue . . . . .                                  | 12    |
| 20. Voltaire and the Duke of Orleans . . . . .            | 13    |
| 21. On the Duke of Wellington . . . . .                   | 13    |

| no.                                                  | PAGE |
|------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 22. The "Buts" . . . . .                             | 14   |
| 23. What becomes of the Pins . . . . .               | 15   |
| 24. Character of Hannibal . . . . .                  | 16   |
| 25. Talleyrand and Bonaparte . . . . .               | 17   |
| 26. Peter the Great and the Lawyers . . . . .        | 17   |
| 27. Hog and Lord Bacon . . . . .                     | 18   |
| 28. Flemish Luxury . . . . .                         | 19   |
| 29. Jasmin, Barber . . . . .                         | 20   |
| 30. The Bloody Battle of the Spurs of Gold . . . . . | 20   |
| 31. The Fight at Minnewater . . . . .                | 21   |
| 32. Caraccioli . . . . .                             | 22   |
| 33. William Prince of Orange . . . . .               | 23   |
| 34. Louis XIV. . . . .                               | 24   |
| 35. Death of Luxembourg . . . . .                    | 25   |
| 36. When to see a Country . . . . .                  | 26   |
| 37. Victor Hugo . . . . .                            | 27   |
| 38. Lord Wellington to General Freyre . . . . .      | 28   |
| 39. Difficulty and Impossibility . . . . .           | 29   |
| 40. What to take . . . . .                           | 29   |
| 41. A Prescription . . . . .                         | 30   |
| 42. A Dissenter . . . . .                            | 30   |
| 43. Murder and Assault . . . . .                     | 31   |
| 44. In Going . . . . .                               | 31   |
| 45. Idiots . . . . .                                 | 32   |
| 46. All Ladies . . . . .                             | 32   |
| 47. They Die but Once . . . . .                      | 33   |
| 48. Long Faces . . . . .                             | 33   |
| 49. About the Post-Office . . . . .                  | 34   |
| 50. Gin and Water . . . . .                          | 34   |
| 51. A Lady on Tom Moore . . . . .                    | 35   |
| 52. Body and Spirit . . . . .                        | 35   |
| 53. A Difficulty . . . . .                           | 36   |
| 54. Twenty Times . . . . .                           | 36   |
| 55. An Error . . . . .                               | 37   |
| 56. His own Medicine Chest . . . . .                 | 37   |

# CONTENTS.

ix

| NO.                                                                   | PAGE |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 57. Forgiveness . . . . .                                             | 38   |
| 58. A very long Nose . . . . .                                        | 38   |
| 59. Examination . . . . .                                             | 39   |
| 60. Cutting out the Third Act, . . . . .                              | 39   |
| 61. Inconvenience . . . . .                                           | 40   |
| 62. I will Return Anon . . . . .                                      | 40   |
| 63. Literal . . . . .                                                 | 41   |
| 64. A Discountess . . . . .                                           | 41   |
| 65. Very Poor . . . . .                                               | 42   |
| 66. Two Brothers Dentists . . . . .                                   | 42   |
| 67. Erskine and Thelwall . . . . .                                    | 42   |
| 68. The Force of Truth . . . . .                                      | 43   |
| 69. Garrick's End . . . . .                                           | 43   |
| 70. Oliver Basselin and the Origin of the Word "Vaudeville" . . . . . | 44   |
| 71. Bearding a Barber . . . . .                                       | 45   |
| 72. The School for Scandal . . . . .                                  | 45   |
| 73. A Loss . . . . .                                                  | 46   |
| 74. Not Taken in . . . . .                                            | 46   |
| 75. On Lord Erskine . . . . .                                         | 47   |
| 76. On Quin . . . . .                                                 | 48   |
| 77. Preface to "The Life of an Oyster written by Himself" . . . . .   | 49   |
| 78. Sharp Girl . . . . .                                              | 49   |
| 79. A Compliment . . . . .                                            | 50   |
| 80. A Kind Request . . . . .                                          | 50   |
| 81. A Western Editor . . . . .                                        | 51   |

## PART II.

|                                                 |    |
|-------------------------------------------------|----|
| 1. Character of William the Conqueror . . . . . | 52 |
| 2. Character of Elizabeth . . . . .             | 53 |
| 3. Labour . . . . .                             | 55 |
| 4. Le Père des Lettres . . . . .                | 56 |
| 5. Liberty and Slavery . . . . .                | 57 |

|                                                             | PAGE. |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| 6. The Utility of History . . . . .                         | 58    |
| 7. Civilisation. . . . .                                    | 59    |
| 8. Reception of James the Second's Queen in France. . . . . | 60    |
| 9. Sir Christopher Hatton . . . . .                         | 62    |
| 10. The last Witches . . . . .                              | 62    |
| 11. An amiable Judge . . . . .                              | 63    |
| 12. Look on this Picture, and then on That , , , . .        | 64    |
| 13. Eschines and Demosthenes . . . . .                      | 65    |
| 14. The Age of Chivalry . . . . .                           | 66    |
| 15. A Bill of Costs , . . . .                               | 67    |
| 16. The Vicar of Wakefield's Neighbours . . . . .           | 68    |
| 17. The Vicar of Wakefield's House . . . . .                | 69    |
| 18. Mary Queen of Scots . . . . .                           | 70    |
| 19. Eldon at Oxford . . . . .                               | 71    |
| 20. Death of Marat . . . . .                                | 72    |
| 21. Victor Hugo's Dramas . . . . .                          | 72    |
| 22. The Trial of Charlotte Corday . . . . .                 | 73    |
| 23. A good Comparison . . . . .                             | 74    |
| 24. A Visit to Bedlam . . . . .                             | 75    |
| 25. The Misanthropist . . . . .                             | 76    |
| 26. Wackford Squeers, Esq. . . . .                          | 77    |
| 27. Sterne and the Monk . . . . .                           | 77    |
| 28. Rural Life . . . . .                                    | 78    |
| 29. Reflect before you Act . . . . .                        | 80    |
| 30. Health . . . . .                                        | 81    |
| 31. Augustus and Mecænas . . . . .                          | 81    |
| 32. Judge Robinson and Mr. Curran . . . . .                 | 82    |
| 33. An Irish Ruse . . . . .                                 | 83    |
| 34. English Scenery . . . . .                               | 84    |
| 35. A Visit to England . . . . .                            | 85    |
| 36. The Point of Honour . . . . .                           | 86    |
| 37. Oliver Twist asks for Some More . . . . .               | 87    |
| 38. Lucian on Dancing . . . . .                             | 88    |
| 39. Scotch Luxury . . . . .                                 | 89    |
| 40. Cato Meeting the Corpse of his Son . . . . .            | 90    |

## CONTENTS.

xi

| No. |                                   | PAGE |
|-----|-----------------------------------|------|
| 41. | Teufelsdröckh . . . . .           | 90   |
| 42. | Charles the Bold . . . . .        | 91   |
| 43. | William Sawtré's Case . . . . .   | 92   |
| 44. | Words of French Origin . . . . .  | 93   |
| 45. | Not Particular . . . . .          | 93   |
| 46. | Colonel Schouardin . . . . .      | 94   |
| 47. | Stage Criticism . . . . .         | 95   |
| 48. | Old Acquaintances . . . . .       | 95   |
| 49. | Danton and Desmoulins . . . . .   | 96   |
| 50. | Friends in Need . . . . .         | 97   |
| 51. | Seymour . . . . .                 | 98   |
| 52. | Punishment of Cowardice . . . . . | 98   |
| 53. | Columbus . . . . .                | 99   |
| 54. | Rather Curious . . . . .          | 100  |
| 55. | General St. Anthony . . . . .     | 101  |
| 56. | The Little Man . . . . .          | 102  |
| 57. | The Duc de Laval . . . . .        | 102  |
| 58. | An Alibi . . . . .                | 103  |
| 59. | The Force of Fashion . . . . .    | 103  |
| 60. | Public Opinion . . . . .          | 105  |
| 61. | The Siege of Cadiz . . . . .      | 105  |
| 62. | Strange Evidence . . . . .        | 107  |
| 63. | Deep in Debt . . . . .            | 107  |

## PART III.

|    |                                         |     |
|----|-----------------------------------------|-----|
| 1. | The Philosopher . . . . .               | 109 |
| 2. | Charles Dickens's Readings . . . . .    | 110 |
| 3. | Civita Vecchia . . . . .                | 111 |
| 4. | Camillus and the Schoolmaster . . . . . | 112 |
| 5. | Paris and its Fate . . . . .            | 114 |
| 6. | Night . . . . .                         | 114 |
| 7. | Ferdinand and Isabella . . . . .        | 115 |



| no. | PAGE                                                                                          |
|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8.  | Speech of the French Ambassador to Queen Elizabeth in<br>Defence of Mary Stuart . . . . . 116 |
| 9.  | Henry the Eighth Disengaged . . . . . 117                                                     |
| 10. | The Philosopher . . . . . 118                                                                 |
| 11. | What Governmental Men should be . . . . . 119                                                 |
| 12. | Luxury . . . . . 121                                                                          |
| 13. | Elephant Hunting . . . . . 122                                                                |
| 14. | Elephant Hunting (End) . . . . . 124                                                          |
| 15. | Hallam . . . . . 125                                                                          |
| 16. | The Giant and the Dwarf . . . . . 126                                                         |
| 17. | Credulity . . . . . 128                                                                       |
| 18. | Elizabeth . . . . . 130                                                                       |
| 19. | Louis XVI. . . . . 131                                                                        |
| 20. | The Vicar of Wakefield on Matrimony . . . . . 132                                             |
| 21. | Johann Jacoby . . . . . 134                                                                   |
| 22. | The Microscope Moralised . . . . . 136                                                        |
| 23. | Generosity a Virtue of Health . . . . . 137                                                   |
| 24. | Insects Better Governed than Men . . . . . 138                                                |
| 25. | Bonaparte's Expedient . . . . . 139                                                           |
| 26. | The Cataract of Yervenkyle . . . . . 140                                                      |
| 27. | Frederick the Great on the Liberty of the Press . . . . . 141                                 |
| 28. | Men of Business . . . . . 142                                                                 |
| 29. | Young Men of Spirit and Gaiety . . . . . 143                                                  |
| 30. | Death of William the Third . . . . . 145                                                      |
| 31. | Different Ways of Discussing . . . . . 148                                                    |
| 32. | Will Summers, the King's Fool . . . . . 150                                                   |
| 33. | Theory and Practice . . . . . 150                                                             |
| 34. | Tobacco . . . . . 151                                                                         |
| 35. | Effects of Music . . . . . 152                                                                |
| 36. | A Maiden Lady's Will . . . . . 153                                                            |
| 37. | Paley at Cambridge . . . . . 154                                                              |
| 38. | Protestant Church Established by Elizabeth . . . . . 155                                      |
|     | VOCABULARY . . . . . 161                                                                      |

# CLASS-BOOK

OF

## FRENCH COMPOSITION.

---

### PART I.

#### I.—NAPOLEON AND MARSHAL MONCEY.

Napoleon I.<sup>1</sup> was one day<sup>2</sup> searching for\* a book in his library, and at last<sup>2</sup> discovered it<sup>3</sup> on a shelf somewhat beyond his reach.<sup>4</sup> Marshal<sup>5</sup> Moncey, one of the tallest men in<sup>6</sup> the army, stepped forward, and said: "Permit me,<sup>7</sup> Sire; I am higher than your majesty."—"You are longer, Marshal," said the emperor with a frown.

\* Words followed by a star must not be translated.

<sup>1</sup> The French make use of the *cardinal* numbers in speaking of sovereigns. The *first* of the series is excepted, and in all cases the article is omitted before the numbers. <sup>2</sup> Adverbs and adverbial locutions follow the verb immediately. <sup>3</sup> Personal pronouns objects precede the verb. <sup>4</sup> *Beyond his reach* = *trop élevée pour qu'il pût y atteindre*. <sup>5</sup> When there is an adjective or a noun used adjectively before a proper name, the article must precede the adjective or the noun used adjectively. <sup>6</sup> *In* is translated by *de* after a superlative. <sup>7</sup> When the verb is written in the imperative affirmative, the personal pronouns objects follow the verb. The pronouns *me* and *te* are then replaced by *moi* and *toi*.

## II.—THE MARQUIS DE FAVIÈRES AND SAMUEL BERNARD.

The Marquis de Favières, a great borrower and a bad paymaster, called on<sup>1</sup> Samuel Bernard, the great financier, one morning, and said: "Sir, I am going<sup>2</sup> to astonish you;<sup>3</sup> I am the Marquis de Favières; I do not know<sup>4</sup> you,<sup>5</sup> and I come to<sup>6</sup> borrow five hundred<sup>6</sup> pounds of you."<sup>7</sup> "Sir," replied Bernard, "I am going to astonish you still more;<sup>8</sup> I know you, and yet I am going to lend them to you."<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> To call on = *se présenter chez*. <sup>2</sup> That form does not exist in French; translate *I go*. <sup>3</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>4</sup> To know = *connaître*, speaking of persons, countries and places. <sup>5</sup> To, meaning "in order to," "for the purpose of," is rendered by *pour*. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. V. Note <sup>6</sup>. <sup>7</sup> In French *to borrow of you* is *to borrow to you*. Personal pronouns, direct as well as indirect objects (dative or accusative) come immediately before the verb. <sup>8</sup> *More* is here *davantage*, and not *plus*, because it is used absolutely. <sup>9</sup> When two personal pronouns are objects of a verb, they both precede the verb, the dative being first and the accusative second. There are two exceptions to this rule: *Lui*, to him, to her; *Leur*, to them, follow the personal pronoun accusative.

---

## III.—ON ALEXANDRE DUMAS.

It is said<sup>1</sup> that Alexandre Dumas is not the author of many novels which bear his signature. One day he met his son and said: "Well, what do you think of<sup>2</sup> my last novel? Have you read<sup>3</sup> it?"<sup>4</sup>—"No, I have not,<sup>5</sup> father,<sup>6</sup> have you?"<sup>7</sup> replied Alexandre Dumas fils, whose<sup>8</sup> reputation for wit is well known<sup>9</sup> and deserved.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *It is said* = *on dit*. When the agent of the passive is not known, the active form with *on* must be used. <sup>2</sup> To think of is *penser à*; but when it means *to have an opinion of*, it is *penser de*. <sup>3</sup> The past participle used with the auxiliary *avoir*, always agrees with its direct object, when that direct object is placed before

the participle. <sup>4</sup> In compound tenses, personal pronouns objects precede the auxiliary : *Je les ai aimés* = *I have loved them*. As for *aimés*, with an *s*, see Note <sup>3</sup> above. <sup>5</sup> Translate *I have not read it*. <sup>6</sup> The possessive adjective is used in the vocative case. <sup>7</sup> *Have you?* = *et vous?* <sup>8</sup> *Whose* = *dont*, to be immediately followed by the subject of the subordinate sentence. <sup>9</sup> The past participle used with the auxiliary *être*, agrees with its subject or nominative both in number and gender : *Nous sommes aimés* = *we are loved*.

---

#### IV.—ON THE SAME.

Alexandre Dumas having noticed that in the English language there were a great many<sup>1</sup> words of French aspect, wrote this characteristic phrase :—"English is only French badly pronounced."

The same Alexandre Dumas<sup>2</sup> returning<sup>5</sup> to Paris from Naples, wrote a letter beginning as follows :<sup>3</sup> "I have just<sup>4</sup> returned,<sup>5</sup> as everybody knows."

<sup>1</sup> *Many* = *nombre de*. <sup>2</sup> *En*, the only preposition which requires the following verb to be in the present participle. *All* the other prepositions require the infinitive. <sup>3</sup> *As follows* = *ainsi*. <sup>4</sup> *To have just* = *venir de*. <sup>5</sup> *To return* is *revenir*, when meaning *to come back*; and *retourner*, when meaning *to go back*.

---

#### V.—LES DEUX DUMAS.

A play by a certain M. Dumas was received at the *Théâtre Français* at the time<sup>1</sup> when<sup>2</sup> a comedy by Alexandre Dumas was being acted.<sup>3</sup> Both gentlemen met<sup>4</sup> one evening in the lobby<sup>5</sup> of the theatre. "Two hundred<sup>6</sup> years ago,<sup>7</sup> said M. Dumas to Alexandre Dumas, the *Théâtre Français* had the two Corneilles,<sup>8</sup> now it has the two Dumas' . . ." "That is true," answered Alexandre Dumas, "quite true, and I hope you will succeed," Thomas." Everybody knows<sup>10</sup> that the great Corneille was called<sup>11</sup> Pierre and his brother Thomas.

<sup>1</sup> à l'époque. <sup>2</sup> When, adverb on. <sup>3</sup> When the agent of the passive is not known, use the active voice with on, or else, use the verb reflexively. <sup>4</sup> To meet (neuter) = se rencontrer. <sup>5</sup> In the lobby = au foyer. In is not here translated by dans, because dans is employed in a determinate sense; it means within, inside, and is not used when no stress is laid on the sense of in (within, inside). He has a sword IN his hand is in French Il a une épée à la main; the whole sword cannot be within, inside the hand. To get INTO parliament (as a member) is in French Entrer AU parlement; Entrer DANS le parlement would mean to go inside the parlement (the building). <sup>6</sup> Vingt and cent are the only cardinal numbers which take an s in the plural, that is, when multiplied by a number and not followed by another number. <sup>7</sup> Ago = il y a, before the number or time. <sup>8</sup> Proper names do not take the mark of the plural. <sup>9</sup> I hope you will succeed = Je vous souhaite bonne chance. <sup>10</sup> To know = savoir, speaking of things; connaître, speaking of things, means to know thoroughly. <sup>11</sup> See Note <sup>3</sup> above.

## VI.—GEORGE III. AND SUTTON.

George III.,<sup>1</sup> speaking to Archbishop<sup>2</sup> Sutton respecting his large<sup>3</sup> family, made the remark: "I believe your grace has better<sup>4</sup> than a dozen." "No, sire," replied the archbishop, "only eleven." "Well,"<sup>5</sup> replied the king, "is not that<sup>6</sup> better than a dozen?"

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. I. Note 1. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. I. Note 5. <sup>3</sup> Nombreux. <sup>4</sup> Better is meilleur when adjective, and mieux when adverb. <sup>5</sup> Well, interjection, is Hé bien. <sup>6</sup> Is not that better = cela ne vaut-il pas mieux. To be better (impersonal) = valoir mieux.

## VII.—CHARLES FOX.

Charles Fox once received a severe lecture<sup>1</sup> from his father about his extravagance, who<sup>2</sup> concluded by<sup>3</sup> saying he wondered<sup>4</sup> he could enjoy<sup>5</sup> a moment's repose, when he considered<sup>6</sup> the immense sums<sup>7</sup> he owed.<sup>6</sup> "My dear father," replied he, "you should<sup>8</sup> not wonder at<sup>9</sup> that; but rather how my creditors can."<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Semonce*. Turn received once a severe lecture. See Ex. I. Note <sup>2</sup>.  
<sup>2</sup> The relative pronoun *qui* would in French refer to *extravagance*, if the sentence were translated literally; the word *father* must be brought immediately before *qui*. Translate then into French: *C.F. received once a severe lecture about his extravagance from his father, who*. Rule.—The relative pronoun ought always to be placed as near its antecedent as possible, in order to avoid ambiguity. <sup>3</sup> Translate *by*, before a present participle, by *en*, before a present participle. <sup>4</sup> *To wonder* = *s'étonner*, followed by the subjunctive mood. Rule.—Verbs expressing 'doubt' 'fear' 'surprise' 'admiration' 'will' 'wish' 'desire' 'consent' 'order' 'command' and all verbs expressing a certain state of the mind, such as 'to be glad' 'to be sorry' &c., require the following verb to be in the subjunctive mood. <sup>5</sup> *To enjoy* = *jouir de*. <sup>6</sup> The imperfect indicative must be used; you could say *was considering*. <sup>7</sup> *Sum* = *somme* (fem.) from *summa*; *somme* (masc.), a nap, from *somnus*. <sup>8</sup> Use the conditional of the verb *devoir* when *should* means *ought to*. <sup>9</sup> *To wonder at* = *s'étonner de*. *To wonder how* = *se demander comment*. <sup>10</sup> Translate literally but wonder rather how my creditors can enjoy a moment's repose, or can it (le).

Note.—*A moment's repose* = *un moment de repos*.

## VIII.—ZENO AND HIS SERVANT.

The philosopher Zeno<sup>1</sup> believed in<sup>2</sup> an inevitable destiny. His servant availed himself<sup>3</sup> of this doctrine while he was beaten<sup>4</sup> for a theft,<sup>5</sup> by<sup>6</sup> exclaiming: "Was I not destined to<sup>7</sup> rob?"—"Yes," replied Zeno, "and to be corrected also."

<sup>1</sup> Proper names ending in *o* in English end in *on* in French.  
<sup>2</sup> *à*. <sup>3</sup> *To avail oneself* = *tirer parti*. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>.  
<sup>5</sup> Translate *for having thieved*, and remember that the infinitive of a verb must be used after a preposition. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. VII. Note <sup>2</sup>.  
<sup>7</sup> *à*.

## IX.—SHERIDAN'S ESCAPE.

Sheridan never was without a\* reason, and never failed to<sup>1</sup> extricate himself<sup>2</sup> in any emergency<sup>3</sup> by his wit. At a country-house, where he was once on a visit,<sup>4</sup> an elderly lady desired to be his companion<sup>5</sup> in a walk. He excused himself at first on account of the badness<sup>6</sup> of the weather. She soon afterwards,<sup>7</sup> however, intercepted him<sup>8</sup> in an attempt to<sup>9</sup> escape without her. "Well," she said,<sup>10</sup> "it has cleared up,<sup>11</sup> I see."—"Why,<sup>12</sup> yes," he answered,<sup>10</sup> "it has cleared up for one, but not enough for two."

<sup>1</sup> To fail to = *manquer de*. <sup>2</sup> To extricate oneself = *se tirer d'affaire*. <sup>3</sup> Emergency = *circonstance critique*. In that sentence by his wit will have to come before in any emergency, as being shorter. Rule.—Of two objects the shorter must come first. <sup>4</sup> On a visit = *en visite*. <sup>5</sup> To be his companion = *l'accompagner*. <sup>6</sup> The badness of the weather = *le mauvais temps*. <sup>7</sup> Adverbs and adverbial locutions follow verbs immediately. However, when the adverbial locution is very long, it is better to place it at the beginning of the sentence. <sup>8</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>9</sup> In an attempt to = *au moment où il cherchait à*. <sup>10</sup> The subject is always placed after the verb when words of any one are quoted. <sup>11</sup> It HAS cleared up = *le temps s'EST éclairci*. Reflexive verbs are used with the auxiliary *être* in compound tenses. <sup>12</sup> Why, interj. = *mais*.

## X.—ON DOUGLAS JERROLD.

Albert Smith's literary signature, "A. S.," was once<sup>1</sup> shown<sup>2</sup> to Douglas Jerrold, who<sup>3</sup> remarked: "Ah, that is a fellow who never tells more than<sup>4</sup> two-thirds<sup>5</sup> of the truth."

<sup>1</sup> Ex. I. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>. <sup>3</sup> Ex. VII. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>4</sup> Than followed by a number is *de*, and not *que*. <sup>5</sup> Two-thirds = *les deux tiers*.

## XI.—EDMUND KEAN.

Edmund Kean was one evening<sup>1</sup> performing<sup>2</sup> before an ignorant and unappreciative<sup>3</sup> provincial<sup>4</sup> audience.<sup>5</sup> It is related<sup>6</sup> that he was<sup>7</sup> first<sup>8</sup> hissed and then<sup>9</sup> pelted with<sup>10</sup> apples. The great tragedian stood<sup>11</sup> this for<sup>12</sup> a time, but, getting out of patience,<sup>13</sup> he picked up<sup>14</sup> some of the apples and thus<sup>15</sup> addressed<sup>16</sup> his opponents: "Gentlemen, as much<sup>17</sup> goose as you please,<sup>18</sup> but no<sup>19</sup> apple-sauce!"<sup>20</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>2</sup> Ex. II. Note <sup>2</sup> and Ex. VII. Note <sup>6</sup>.  
<sup>3</sup> When two or more adjectives qualify the same noun, they are placed after that noun. <sup>4</sup> *Provincial* = *de province*, to be placed after the noun and before the two adjectives. <sup>5</sup> *Audience*, meaning *assembly of people*, is *auditoire* (m.) and *audience* (fem.), when meaning interview. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>. <sup>7</sup> In the preterit (narrative). <sup>8</sup> *First*, adverb, is *d'abord*. In compound tenses, adverbs and adverbial locutions are placed between the auxiliary and the past participle. When adverbial locutions are very long, they are placed after the past participle or in the beginning of the sentence; so are always adverbs of time, such as *aujourd'hui*, *hier*, &c.  
<sup>9</sup> *Ensuite*. <sup>10</sup> *Pelted with apples*. Use the active form and say on *lui lança des pommes*. <sup>11</sup> *To stand, to endure* = *supporter, endurer*.  
<sup>12</sup> *For*, speaking of time, is *pendant*. <sup>13</sup> *To get out of patience* = *Perdre patience*. <sup>14</sup> *To pick up* = *ramasser*. <sup>15</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>2</sup>.  
<sup>16</sup> *To address* = *s'adresser à*. <sup>17</sup> *As much . . . as* = *autant . . . que*. **Rule.**—*De*, not followed by the article, must always precede a noun which comes after an adverb of quantity.  
<sup>18</sup> The future must be used when a future action is implied. Use *vouloir* for *to please* in this sentence. <sup>19</sup> *No, not any* = *pas de*. The partitive article is always *de*, and never *du*, *de la*, *de l'* or *des*, when the sentence is negative. <sup>20</sup> *Apple sauce* = *sauce aux pommes*.

## XII.—SPOHR.

Spohr was one day<sup>1</sup> met<sup>2</sup> in the street on his way<sup>3</sup> to the theatre, where he had<sup>4</sup> to conduct the opera in<sup>5</sup> honour of the birthday of the Elector. He was clothed in<sup>6</sup> a heavy winter mantle, although<sup>7</sup> the thermometer



stood<sup>8</sup> eighty degrees above zero. "Are you sick?" asked a friend who met him. "No," replied Spohr, throwing back his mantle, and showing his breast covered with<sup>9</sup> orders. "I am only ashamed to<sup>10</sup> go thus through the streets."

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>. <sup>3</sup> Translate *going*. <sup>4</sup> *To have to* = *avoir à*. <sup>5</sup> *En*, always used in a vague and indeterminate sense, and therefore never followed by the definite article *le, la, les*, except in few expressions sanctioned by usage, such as *en la présence, &c.* <sup>6</sup> *To be dressed, clothed in* = *être vêtu de*; *was* is to be put in the imperfect indicative, because he was clothed in, &c., at the time he was met, &c. <sup>7</sup> *Bien que, quoique*, with the subjunctive. <sup>8</sup> *To stand* = *être*, to be put in the subjunctive after *quoique* or *bien que*, and in the imperfect subjunctive, because *he was clothed* is in a past tense. <sup>9</sup> *De*. *With* is translated by *avec* when it means "*with the help of*," or "*in company with*," as *I am with my father*, or *I have seen that star with a telescope*. But *I have seen that star WITH my own eyes*, would be in French, *J'ai vu cette étoile DE mes propres yeux*; no help was required. *I have struck him with my fist, I have struck him with a stick*. *De* would be used in the first sentence, and *avec* in the second. <sup>10</sup> *Ashamed to* = *honteux de*.

### XIII.—KORSAKOF.

Korsakof, a favourite of the Empress Catherine, possessed<sup>1</sup> a handsome face and a very elegant figure, but was entirely destitute of knowledge. As soon as he had<sup>2</sup> obtained the post of favourite, he thought<sup>2</sup> that a man like him<sup>3</sup> ought<sup>4</sup> naturally to\* have a library. Accordingly, he sent for<sup>5</sup> the most celebrated bookseller in<sup>6</sup> St. Petersburg, without delay, and informed him<sup>7</sup> that he wanted<sup>8</sup> books for his house at Wasilchikoff, of which<sup>9</sup> the empress had just<sup>10</sup> made him<sup>11</sup> a\* present. The bookseller asked<sup>2</sup> him<sup>12</sup> what books he wanted. "You understand that better<sup>13</sup> than I,"<sup>3</sup> replied the favourite, "it<sup>14</sup> is your affair: but there must be<sup>15</sup> great books<sup>16</sup> at the bottom and little ones\* above, exactly as at the empress's."<sup>17</sup>

<sup>1</sup> He was possessing at the time this story took place, therefore use the imperfect indicative. <sup>2</sup> Preterit indicative. <sup>3</sup> Personal pronouns used by themselves or after prepositions are *moi, toi, lui, elle, soi, nous, vous, eux, elles*. <sup>4</sup> *Devait*. <sup>5</sup> To send for = *Envoyer chercher, or Faire venir*. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>6</sup>. <sup>7</sup> And informed him = *et lui dit*. <sup>8</sup> That he was wanting. Use the imperfect indicative. <sup>9</sup> Of which = *dont*. <sup>10</sup> See Ex. IV. Note <sup>4</sup>. <sup>11</sup> Him, dative. <sup>12</sup> Him, dative. *Demander quelqu'un* (accus.) would mean to ask for some one. <sup>13</sup> See Ex. VI. Note <sup>4</sup>. <sup>14</sup> It is *ce* in French, when it can be replaced in English by *that*. Besides, the pronouns *he, she, it, this, they, these*, used with the verb *être*, are all translated by *ce*, when the attribute of the verb *être* is either a noun, a demonstrative or a possessive pronoun. Ex.: *c'est ma sœur, she is my sister; ce sont celles de mon ami, they are those (the sisters) of my friend; ce sont les miennes, they are mine*. <sup>15</sup> There must be = *Il faut qu'il y ait*. Impersonal verbs (*il faut*) require the subjunctive. *There is* = *il y a*. <sup>16</sup> Books is taken in a partitive sense, but it is preceded by an adjective, and the partitive article must therefore be *de* only. <sup>17</sup> At the empress's, at the house of the empress. At the house of = *chez*.

#### XIV.—A MISER.

Mr. Watson, uncle to<sup>1</sup> the late<sup>2</sup> Marquis of R., a man of immense fortune,<sup>3</sup> finding himself at the point<sup>4</sup> of death, desired<sup>5</sup> a friend who was present to give him a drawer, in which<sup>6</sup> was an old shirt, that<sup>7</sup> he might put it on.\* Being asked<sup>8</sup> why he wished to change<sup>9</sup> his linen, when he was so ill: "Because," replied he, "I know that the shirt I have on<sup>10</sup> at my death, belongs to the nurse,<sup>11</sup> and that old one<sup>12</sup> is good enough<sup>13</sup> for her."<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *De*. <sup>2</sup> *Feu*. This adjective always comes before the noun and agrees with it, if placed *immediately* before it, and does not, if placed before the article. Ex: *La feue reine* or *Feu la reine, the ex-queen, the late queen*. <sup>3</sup> Translate of an immense fortune. <sup>4</sup> *Article*. <sup>5</sup> *Prier* with *de* before the infinitive which follows. <sup>6</sup> *où, dans lequel*. <sup>7</sup> *that, in order that, afin que, pour que*, with the subjunctive. <sup>8</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>. <sup>9</sup> The two verbs *changer* and *redoubler* often take *de* before the noun following, and do not admit of the possessive adjective. Ex: *He is changing his boots; il change de bottes* To change one's mind = *changer d'avis*. <sup>10</sup> I have on, que je porte. <sup>11</sup> *garde-malade*. <sup>12</sup> That old one = *cette vieille-là*. <sup>13</sup> Translate enough good. <sup>14</sup> See Ex. XIII. Note <sup>3</sup>.

*tion de faire pendre.* <sup>12</sup> *Of them = en*, before the verb. <sup>14</sup> When a future action is implied, the future tense must be used. Ex. : *as soon as I return, when I return ; aussitôt que je serai de retour, quand je serai de retour.* <sup>15</sup> *Dans mon pays. Chez moi* would mean in my house or in the part of the country I come from.

## XXVII.—HOGG AND LORD BACON.

*Friday when*

Lord Bacon, ~~on one occasion~~, was about<sup>2</sup> to pass sentence of death<sup>3</sup> upon a man of the name of Hogg, who had just<sup>4</sup> been tried for a long career of crime, the prisoner suddenly<sup>5</sup> claimed to be heard in arrest<sup>6</sup> of judgment, saying, with an expression of arch confidence ~~as he addressed the bench~~, "I claim, indulgence, my lord, on the plea<sup>7</sup> of relationship; for<sup>8</sup> I am convinced your lordship will never be unnatural enough<sup>10</sup> to hang one of your own family."

"Indeed," replied the judge, with some amazement, "I was not aware that<sup>11</sup> I had the honour of your alliance; perhaps you<sup>12</sup> will be good enough<sup>10</sup> to name the degree of our mutual affinity."

"I am sorry, my lord," returned the impudent thief, "I<sup>13</sup> cannot trace the links of consanguinity; but the moral evidence is sufficiently pertinent. My name, my lord, is Hogg, your lordship's<sup>14</sup> is Bacon, and all the world will allow that bacon and hog are very closely allied."

"I am sorry," replied his lordship, "I<sup>13</sup> cannot admit the truth of your instance; hog cannot be bacon till<sup>16</sup> it is hanged; and so,<sup>16</sup> before<sup>17</sup> I can admit your plea, or acknowledge the family compact, Hogg must be hanged to-morrow morning."

<sup>1</sup> *Dans.* <sup>2</sup> To be about to = *aller, être sur le point de.* <sup>3</sup> To pass sentence of death on = *prononcer la sentence de mort de.* <sup>4</sup> See Ex. IV. Note <sup>4</sup>. <sup>5</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>6</sup> Claimed to be heard in arrest of judgment = *demandà à être entendu, qu'il fût sursis à l'exécution de son jugement.* <sup>7</sup> As he addressed = *en s'adressant à.* <sup>8</sup> On the plea of relationship = *à cause de notre parenté.* <sup>9</sup> See Ex. XXIV. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>10</sup> Enough . . . to = *assez . . . pour.* Besides, See Ex. XIV. Note <sup>13</sup>. <sup>11</sup> That I had the honour must be trans-

*before admitting you, this = avant de faire.  
 avoir à votre disposition.*

# CLASS-BOOK OF FRENCH COMPOSITION. 19

lated by *avoir l'honneur*, because the verb of this subordinate sentence is in the same person as the verb in the principal sentence, and must therefore be written in the infinitive mood. <sup>12</sup> After *peut-être*, *aussi toujours*, and *encore*, the subject is placed after the verb, when these adverbs are at the beginning of the sentence. Ex. : *perhaps he will come* = *peut-être viendra-t-il*. <sup>13</sup> *I cannot*, depending on *I am sorry*, ought to be written in the subjunctive mood, see Ex. VII. Rule <sup>4</sup>. But, *I cannot* is in the same person as *I am sorry*, see Note <sup>11</sup> above, so it must be written in the infinitive. <sup>14</sup> Translate : *that of your lordship*. <sup>15</sup> See Ex. XXIV. Note <sup>11</sup>. <sup>16</sup> *Aussi*, see Note <sup>12</sup> above. <sup>17</sup> See Ex. XIX. Note <sup>9</sup>. Here, *before* should be translated by *avant de*, followed by the infinitive, on account of the rule given above <sup>11</sup>.

## XXVIII.—FLEMISH LUXURY.

When the burgomasters of Ghent, Bruges, and Ypres went to Paris to <sup>1</sup> pay <sup>2</sup> homage to King <sup>3</sup> John, in 1351, they were received with great pomp and distinction ; but, being invited to a festival, they observed that their seats at table were not furnished <sup>4</sup> with <sup>5</sup> cushions ; whereupon, <sup>6</sup> to <sup>1</sup> make known <sup>7</sup> their displeasure at this want <sup>8</sup> of regard to <sup>9</sup> their dignity, they folded their richly-embroidered cloaks and seated themselves upon <sup>10</sup> them. On <sup>11</sup> rising from table, they left their cloaks behind them, <sup>12</sup> and, being informed <sup>13</sup> of their apparent forgetfulness, Simon van Eertrycke, burgomaster of Bruges, replied : " We Flemings are <sup>14</sup> not in the habit of <sup>15</sup> carrying away <sup>16</sup> our cushions after dinner."—LONGFELLOW.

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. II. Note <sup>5</sup>. <sup>2</sup> *To pay homage* = *rendre hommage*.  
<sup>3</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>5</sup>. <sup>4</sup> *Pourvu*, past participle of *pouvoir*, to provide. <sup>5</sup> See Ex. XII. Note <sup>9</sup>. <sup>6</sup> *Sur quoi*. <sup>7</sup> The verb *faire* requires the following verb to be in the infinitive (causative mood).  
<sup>8</sup> *Manque*. <sup>9</sup> *To* is translated by *pour* or *envers*, after an adjective or a noun expressing a feeling. Ex. : *You are kind to me* = *vous êtes bon pour moi*. <sup>10</sup> Personal pronouns are not used after prepositions, when referring to things. An adverb must be used. *Upon them*, here, should be translated by *dessus*. <sup>11</sup> Translate : *when they rose*. <sup>12</sup> Here *them* can be translated after the preposition, because that personal pronoun refers to persons. Besides, see Ex. XIII. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>13</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>. <sup>14</sup> *We* must be repeated before the verb. <sup>15</sup> *To be in the habit of* = *avoir l'habitude de*. <sup>16</sup> *To carry away* = *emporter*.

## XV.—AN EMPEROR OF CHINA.

An emperor of China had devoted himself<sup>1</sup> to the study of alchemy. An impostor brought him an elixir, declaring that if he would<sup>2</sup> drink it, he would become immortal. A mandarin who was present, having in vain tried to<sup>3</sup> undeceive him, took the cup and drank the liquor. The Emperor, enraged at<sup>4</sup> his presumption, condemned him to death. "Sire," said the mandarin, "if this liquor can bestow immortality, you cannot put me to death; if not,<sup>5</sup> what harm<sup>6</sup> have I done?" This speech<sup>7</sup> appeased the emperor, who admired and praised the wisdom of the mandarin.

<sup>1</sup> In compound tenses personal pronouns objects precede the auxiliary. Reflexive verbs are used with the auxiliary *être* in their compound tenses. <sup>2</sup> Imperfect indicative of *vouloir*. An idea of will is implied, it is not the conditional of *to drink*. <sup>3</sup> *De*. <sup>4</sup> *Enraged at* = *furieux de*. <sup>5</sup> *Sinon*. <sup>6</sup> *Quel mal!* <sup>7</sup> *Ces paroles*.

## XVI.—FREDERICK THE GREAT.

A French nobleman, who waited upon<sup>1</sup> Frederick the Great of Prussia, at Sans-Souci, expressed his astonishment at seeing<sup>2</sup> the emperor's portrait in every apartment of the palace; and asked the king<sup>3</sup> what might be the reason<sup>4</sup> of his thus honouring<sup>5</sup> the portrait of his greatest enemy. "Oh!" said the king, "the emperor is a busy, enterprising young monarch,<sup>6</sup> and I find it necessary<sup>7</sup> always<sup>8</sup> to have an eye upon him."<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Visiter*. <sup>2</sup> *De voir*. <sup>3</sup> *To the king*. See Ex. XIII. Note <sup>12</sup>. <sup>4</sup> *dans quel but* (lit. *For what end*). <sup>5</sup> *Il honorait ainsi*. <sup>6</sup> *Jeune* is an adjective that comes before the noun. Besides, see Ex. XI. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>7</sup> Translate: *and I find that it is necessary to*.

Note.—*It is*, in the above sentence, must be translated by *il est* not by *c'est*, because *what is necessary* follows, and *it is il* (impersonal). If the sentence, on the contrary, were, *I must have an eye upon him, it is necessary*, it would be *ce*, because *it* would refer to what is said before, *it* could be replaced by *that* in English. See Ex. XIII. Note <sup>14</sup>. This rule always holds good when *it is* is followed by an adjective or an expression used adjectively.

<sup>8</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>9</sup> *To keep, to have an eye upon some one* = *ne pas perdre quelqu'un de vue, or avoir quelqu'un sous les yeux*.

## XVII.—LOUIS XIV. AND THE BURGOMASTER OF AMSTERDAM.

When Louis XIV.<sup>1</sup> was at the gates of Amsterdam, which, in all probability, could not have<sup>2</sup> withstood<sup>3</sup> him,<sup>4</sup> and when<sup>5</sup> the consternation was general, the magistrates assembled,<sup>6</sup> and after deliberating<sup>7</sup> on what was to be done,<sup>8</sup> they agreed unanimously to deliver up\* the keys of the town. It was observed,<sup>9</sup> however, that an old burgomaster, having fallen asleep,<sup>10</sup> had not voted. They awakened him and then told him that they had resolved to deliver up\* the keys to Louis. "Has he demanded them?"<sup>11</sup> said the old man.<sup>12</sup> "Not yet," said the council. "Then, gentlemen," he replied, "wait at least till<sup>13</sup> he be pleased to seek them." This expression, it is said,<sup>14</sup> saved the republic.

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>1</sup>. <sup>2</sup> Could not have = *n'aurait pas pu*. <sup>3</sup> To withstand = *résister à*. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>5</sup> Conjunctions are not repeated in French, they are replaced by *que* after they have been expressed once. *Que*, thus used, governs the same mood as the conjunction which it replaces. There is, however, one exception. *Si* governs the indicative, and *que* replacing *si*, requires the subjunctive. Ex. : *si vous venez à Londres et QUE vous y RESTIEZ un mois, je retournerai à Paris avec vous*. If you come to London and stay there a month, I will go back to Paris with you. In this sentence the conjunction is only used once in English, it must be expressed twice in French. Rule.—In French the conjunction is first expressed and then *que* must be used as many times as the conjunction is again expressed or understood in English. <sup>6</sup> To assemble (neuter) = *s'assembler*. <sup>7</sup> Always translate, *after having, &c.*, and remember that prepositions are followed by the infinitive, with the exception of *en*, which is followed by the present participle. <sup>8</sup> I am to, I was to, je dois, je devais. On what was to be done. Translate : *On what one was to do* ; according to Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup> ; *sur ce qu'on devait faire*. <sup>9</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>. <sup>10</sup> To fall asleep = *s'endormir*. Besides, see Ex. IX. Note <sup>11</sup>. <sup>11</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>3</sup> and Note <sup>4</sup>. <sup>12</sup> Old man = *vieillard*. <sup>13</sup> To wait until, till = *attendre que*. In this expression *que* stands for *jusqu'à ce que*, and therefore requires the subjunctive. <sup>14</sup> Translate : *it is said that this expression saved the republic*, and see Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>.

## OF FRENCH COMPOSITION.

### THE DUKE OF CHOISEUL AND CHARLES TOWNSHEND.

When the Duke of Choiseul, a remarkably meagre man, was in London to negotiate a peace,<sup>4</sup> Charles Townshend asked<sup>5</sup> whether the French Government had sent the preliminaries of a treaty, answered: "Yes, madam," but they have sent the outline of an

... was remarkably meagre. <sup>2</sup> In, to and at are before names of countries and by *à* before names. <sup>3</sup> See Ex. II. Note <sup>5</sup>. <sup>4</sup> *Un traité de paix*. <sup>5</sup> *Avait*, in the imperfect indicative, not in the imperative because C. Townshend was asked whether the French Government had sent the preliminaries of a treaty at that very time when the question was asked.

Remark.—If the time past referred to is the same both in the principal and the subordinate sentences, the imperfect indicative is used in the subordinate. Of course I suppose that the imperative has not to be used in the subordinate sentence. I have translated: *J'ai rencontré un homme qui PORTAIT une boîte*, if I want to express that the man was carrying the box when I met him; but I will say *J'ai rencontré un homme qui PORTA une boîte*, if I wish to express that the man carried a box any time before I met him.

## XIX.—THE TONGUE.

One morning a party came into the public rooms at Buxton, somewhat later than usual,<sup>1</sup> and requested some tongue. They were told<sup>2</sup> that Lord Byron had eaten it<sup>3</sup> all.<sup>4</sup> "I am very angry with<sup>5</sup> his lordship," said a lady, loud enough<sup>6</sup> for him<sup>7</sup> to hear the observation. "I am sorry for it,<sup>8</sup> madam," retorted Lord Byron; "but before<sup>9</sup> eating the tongue I was assured<sup>10</sup> you did not want<sup>11</sup> it."

<sup>1</sup> *D'habitude*. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>. *To tell some one* is *dire à quelqu'un*. <sup>3</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>4</sup>. <sup>4</sup> *All*, in French, follows the verb, not the personal pronoun, as in English. Ex.: *They all go*

*out, ils sortent tous ; I know them all, je les connais tous.* <sup>5</sup> *To be angry with = être fâché contre.* <sup>6</sup> See Ex. XIV. Note <sup>13</sup>.  
<sup>7</sup> Translate: *In order that he might hear. In order that = pour que,* with the subjunctive. <sup>8</sup> *Of it = en* before the verb.  
<sup>9</sup> *Before* is *avant*, when preposition of time and order; *devant* when preposition of place; *avant de* when before an infinitive; *avant que* with the subjunctive, when a conjunction; *auparavant*, when an adverb of time. <sup>10</sup> See Ex. III. Notes <sup>1</sup> and <sup>4</sup>. <sup>11</sup> *To want, to need = avoir besoin de.* Again see <sup>8</sup> above.

---

## XX.—VOLTAIRE AND THE DUKE OF ORLEANS.

A French nobleman who had been satirised by Voltaire, meeting the poet soon after, gave him<sup>1</sup> a hearty drubbing.<sup>2</sup> The poet immediately<sup>3</sup> flew to the Duke of Orleans, told him<sup>4</sup> how he had been used,<sup>5</sup> and begged<sup>6</sup> he would do him justice. "Sir," replied the Duke, with a significant smile, "it has been done<sup>7</sup> you already."

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>2</sup> *a hearty drubbing = une bonne volée de coups de bâton.* <sup>3</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. XIX. Note <sup>2</sup>.  
<sup>5</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>. *To use some one = traiter quelqu'un.*  
<sup>6</sup> Translate: *begged him to do him justice.* <sup>7</sup> See Ex. III. Notes <sup>1</sup> and <sup>4</sup> and Ex. XI. Note <sup>8</sup>.

---

## XXI.—ON THE DUKE OF WELLINGTON.

The Duke of Wellington was once in danger at sea,<sup>1</sup> when, just before<sup>2</sup> bedtime,<sup>3</sup> the captain came to his cabin, and announced that in<sup>4</sup> a few<sup>5</sup> minutes all would be over.<sup>6</sup> "Very well," said the Duke, "then I shall not take off<sup>7</sup> my boots."

A guest at the Duke of Wellington's table blurted out<sup>8</sup> the question, "Pray, Duke, were you surprised at<sup>9</sup> Waterloo?" With what a\* neat and easy turn of the wrist<sup>10</sup> he ran the unhappy man through!<sup>11</sup> "No, but I am<sup>12</sup> now."



<sup>1</sup> *At sea = en mer, sur mer.* <sup>2</sup> See Ex. XIX. Note <sup>9</sup>. <sup>3</sup> *L'heure de se coucher.* <sup>4</sup> Speaking of time, *dans* means the time *when*, and *en* the time *how long*. Ex.: *J'irai à Paris DANS dix heures, I shall go to Paris in ten hours* (hence); *j'irai à Paris EN dix heures, I shall go to Paris in ten hours* (it will take me ten hours. . . .) <sup>5</sup> *a few = quelques; few = peu de.* <sup>6</sup> Translate: *all would be finished.* <sup>7</sup> *To take off = ôter, enlever.* <sup>8</sup> *To blurt out = laisser échapper.* <sup>9</sup> See Ex. XVIII. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>10</sup> *Avec quelle grâce et quelle facilité.* <sup>11</sup> *To run through* (active) is literally *transpercer*, but here the sentence should be *il lui enfonça le fer dans le cœur.* <sup>12</sup> When a noun is used adjectively, an adjective, or a participle is understood after the verb *être, le* (so) must precede the verb. Ex.: *Are you surprised? I am. Êtes-vous surpris? Je LE suis.*

When a noun or an adjective used substantively is understood after *être, le, la, les*, according to the gender and number of the noun understood, must precede the verb. Ex.: *Are you the mother of Henry? I am. Êtes-vous la mère d'Henri? Je LA suis.* But, according to the foregoing rule, *Are you a mother? I am,* would be *êtes-vous mère? Je LE suis.* Here *mère* is a noun used adjectively; that is why *a* must not be translated before *mère*, and why *le*, invariable, must be used.

## XXII.—THE “BUTS.”

When the affairs of Italy were<sup>1</sup> the subject of general conversation, Douglas Jerrold was very enthusiastic in favour of Mazzini and<sup>2</sup> his party. He was talking hopefully and warmly on the subject one evening at a party,<sup>3</sup> when<sup>4</sup> a very cold, stiff, and argumentative<sup>5</sup> gentleman was present. This iced man interrupted<sup>6</sup> Jerrold at every turn with a doubting “but.” At last, Jerrold, fairly roused by the coolness of his opponent, turned<sup>7</sup> sharply<sup>8</sup> upon him, and said: “I will thank you<sup>9</sup> to throw no more<sup>10</sup> of your cold water ‘buts’ at me.<sup>11</sup>”

<sup>1</sup> *To be the subject of = faire le sujet de.* <sup>2</sup> *Of* must be repeated before *his party.* <sup>3</sup> *Soirée* (fem.) <sup>4</sup> The subject of the verb in this subordinate sentence is very long, the verb should be put before it. Translate *when was present by où se trouvait.* <sup>5</sup> *Qui* //

*plaisait à argumenter.* Besides, see Ex. XI. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>6</sup> *was interrupting*; the imperfect. <sup>7</sup> *To turn* (movement of the body) = *se tourner*. <sup>8</sup> *Brusquement, vivement, aigrement.* <sup>9</sup> Translate *I shall be obliged to you.* <sup>10</sup> *No more* = *ne* before the verb and *plus* after it. The expressions *not, never, nothing, no more*, are rendered by *ne . . . pas, ne . . . jamais, ne . . . rien, ne . . . plus.* In simple tenses, *ne* comes before the verb and *pas, jamais, &c.*, after it, *Je NE mange PAS.* In compound tenses, *ne* comes before the auxiliary and *pas, jamais, &c.*, between the auxiliary and the past participle, *Je N'ai RIEN mangé.* In the infinitive mood, both parts of the negation come before the verb, the one immediately after the other. *NE RIEN manger.* <sup>11</sup> The dative *to me.* See Ex. II. Note <sup>7</sup>.

---

### XXIII.—WHAT BECOMES<sup>1</sup> OF THE PINS.

It is estimated<sup>2</sup> that no less than<sup>3</sup> 50,000 000 pins are manufactured<sup>2</sup> daily in<sup>4</sup> England and in<sup>4</sup> Dublin; and that out of<sup>5</sup> this number 37,000,000 are produced in<sup>4</sup> Birmingham alone, thus leaving 13,000,000 for the production of Dublin, Stroud and London. The weight of wire consumed for the purpose is 1,275½ tons<sup>6</sup> every year.

Question: What becomes<sup>1</sup> of these pins produced with such<sup>7</sup> rapidity and in such numbers<sup>8</sup>? That<sup>9</sup> the tremendous quantity above referred to is sold<sup>2</sup> every day is evident from facts; but where these necessary items to<sup>10</sup> our domestic comfort disappear,<sup>11</sup> is a matter<sup>12</sup> for curious speculation.<sup>13</sup>

Put all the figures into words. <sup>1</sup> Translate *what do pins become.* <sup>2</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>. <sup>3</sup> See Ex. X. Note <sup>4</sup>. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. XVIII. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>5</sup> *out of* = *sur.* <sup>6</sup> The adjective *demi* agrees in gender with the noun, when it follows the noun, and does not when it precedes it. <sup>7</sup> *Une pareille.* <sup>8</sup> *Quantité.* <sup>9</sup> Translate. *It is evident from facts that . . .* and see Ex. XVI. Note <sup>7</sup>. <sup>10</sup> *De.* <sup>11</sup> The subject being very long, put the verb first. <sup>12</sup> *Sujet.* <sup>13</sup> *Théorie, conjecture.*

---

## XXIV.—CHARACTER OF HANNIBAL.

Hannibal, this extraordinary man, had been made<sup>1</sup> the sworn foe of Rome, almost from<sup>2</sup> his infancy; for<sup>3</sup> while<sup>4</sup> yet very young, his father brought him<sup>5</sup> before<sup>6</sup> the altar, and obliged him<sup>5</sup> to take an oath,<sup>7</sup> that he would never be in friendship<sup>8</sup> with the Romans, nor<sup>9</sup> desist from opposing<sup>10</sup> their power, till<sup>11</sup> he or they should be no more.<sup>12</sup> On<sup>13</sup> his first appearance<sup>14</sup> in<sup>15</sup> the field, he united, in his own\* person, the masterly method of commanding, with the most perfect obedience to his superiors.

~~Then~~ he was equally beloved by<sup>16</sup> his generals, and the troops he was appointed to lead. He was possessed<sup>17</sup> *de la plus grande* of the greatest courage in<sup>18</sup> opposing danger, and the *présence d'esprit* greatest presence of mind in retiring from it.<sup>19</sup> No *fatigue* fatigue was able to subdue his body, nor<sup>20</sup> ~~any~~ misfortune to break his spirit; he was<sup>21</sup> equally patient of heat and cold, and he took<sup>22</sup> sustenance merely to<sup>23</sup> content nature, not to<sup>23</sup> delight his appetite. He<sup>24</sup> was the best horseman and the swiftest runner of the time, and considered<sup>25</sup> as the most skilful commander<sup>26</sup> of antiquity.—GOLDSMITH.

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>. <sup>2</sup> *Depuis*. <sup>3</sup> *For*, preposition = *pour*; for (conj.) = *car*. <sup>4</sup> Translate: *while he was yet very young*. <sup>5</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. XIX. Note <sup>9</sup>. <sup>7</sup> To take an oath = *jurer, prêter serment, faire serment (de)*. <sup>8</sup> Translate: *the friend of*. <sup>9</sup> Turn: *and that he would never desist*. <sup>10</sup> *Combattre, s'opposer à*. <sup>11</sup> *Jusqu'à ce que*, with the subjunctive, when a conjunction; till is *jusqu'à*, when a preposition. <sup>12</sup> See Ex. XXII. Note <sup>10</sup>. <sup>13</sup> *à*. <sup>14</sup> *Apparition*. <sup>15</sup> *Sur le champ de bataille*. <sup>16</sup> After a passive verb, *by* or *with* is translated by *de*, when the verb expresses an action wholly of the mind, and by *par*, when the bodily faculties participate in the action. Ex.: *I am loved by my parents, je suis aimé de mes parents*; *he was struck by lightning, il fut frappé par la foudre*. <sup>17</sup> To be possessed of = *posséder*. <sup>18</sup> In opposing danger = *en faisant face au danger, en face du danger*. <sup>19</sup> From it = *en*, pronoun following the rule, Ex. I. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>20</sup> Turn: *no misfortune could break his spirit*. <sup>21</sup> To be patient of = *être capable d'endurer*. <sup>22</sup> He used to take (the imperfect indicative). <sup>23</sup> See Ex. II. Note <sup>6</sup>. <sup>24</sup> See Ex. XIII. Note <sup>14</sup>. <sup>25</sup> Translate *He was considered*. <sup>26</sup> *Général, capitaine*.

## XXV.—TALLEYRAND AND BONAPARTE.

Talleyrand and Bonaparte never liked each other.<sup>1</sup> The former<sup>2</sup> was at<sup>3</sup> Madame Crawford's house in<sup>4</sup> Paris, when some one came in<sup>5</sup> and announced the death of Bonaparte. It<sup>6</sup> made a sort of sensation in the room, and Madame Crawford exclaimed: "What an<sup>7</sup> event!" Talleyrand<sup>8</sup> was sitting<sup>9</sup> in a corner near by,<sup>9</sup> ~~and very~~ quietly<sup>10</sup> replied: "It<sup>11</sup> is no longer<sup>12</sup> an event, it<sup>11</sup> is a piece<sup>13</sup> of news."

<sup>1</sup> Each other, one another = *l'un l'autre* (speaking of two persons), *les uns les autres* (speaking of more than two persons). Besides, the verb must be used reflexively. <sup>2</sup> The former = *celui-là*; the latter = *celui-ci*. <sup>3</sup> See Ex. XIII. Note <sup>17</sup>. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. XVIII. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>5</sup> To come in = *entrer*. <sup>6</sup> Cela. <sup>7</sup> In exclamative sentences *what* a is simply *quel*. <sup>8</sup> To be sitting = *être assis*. <sup>9</sup> Near by = *tout près de là*. <sup>10</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>11</sup> See Ex. XIII. Note <sup>14</sup>. <sup>12</sup> See Ex. XXII. Note <sup>10</sup>. <sup>13</sup> A piece of news = *une nouvelle*. *Nouvelle* is used in the plural for more than one piece of news.

## XXVI.—PETER THE GREAT AND THE LAWYERS.

Peter the Great, being at Westminster Hall in term time,<sup>1</sup> and seeing<sup>2</sup> multitudes<sup>3</sup> of people<sup>2</sup> swarming about<sup>3</sup> the courts of law, asked<sup>4</sup> one of the persons<sup>5</sup> near him: "who<sup>6</sup> all these busy people were, and what they were about."<sup>7</sup> Being answered<sup>8</sup> that they<sup>9</sup> were lawyers. "Lawyers!" returned he with great vivacity, "why,<sup>10</sup> I have but<sup>11</sup> four in my whole kingdom, and I intend hanging<sup>12</sup> two of them<sup>13</sup> as soon as I return<sup>14</sup> home."<sup>15</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In term time = *au moment où siégeaient les tribunaux*. <sup>2</sup> People = *gens, personnes*. *People* is translated by *peuple*, when meaning *nation*, or *mob*. <sup>3</sup> Dans les cours de justice. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. XIII. Note <sup>13</sup>. <sup>5</sup> Translate: of the persons who were near him. <sup>6</sup> Who were, &c. <sup>7</sup> What they were about = *ce qu'ils faisaient*. <sup>8</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>. <sup>9</sup> See Ex. XIII. Note <sup>14</sup>. <sup>10</sup> Mais. <sup>11</sup> But; only = *ne . . . que*; *ne* before the verb and *que* after it. <sup>12</sup> Four (of them). <sup>13</sup> I intend hanging = *j'ai l'intention de pendre*; but here the verb *Faire* should be used, because Peter would not hang the lawyers himself, he would have them hanged. Say *j'ai l'inten-*

them Dante holds the chief place, unchallenged and unapproached. But France has waited till<sup>19</sup> this century for\* her poet of widest range,<sup>20</sup> of most musical tongue, a "mighty-voiced<sup>21</sup> inventor of harmonies."—*Daily News*, Feb. 27, 1877.

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. XVI. Note <sup>7</sup>. <sup>2</sup> *De*. <sup>3</sup> *Penser*. <sup>4</sup> *Admis*. <sup>5</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>6</sup>. <sup>6</sup> *To look back to some distant time = reporter sa pensée, se reporter à une époque éloignée.* <sup>7</sup> See Ex. II. Note <sup>8</sup>. <sup>8</sup> *To delight to = se plaire à.* <sup>9</sup> *En*. <sup>10</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>8</sup>. <sup>11</sup> *Au-dessus de.* <sup>12</sup> *Portée* (fem.). <sup>13</sup> See Ex. XVIII. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>14</sup> Long adjectives in the comparative always follow the noun. <sup>15</sup> *Far reaching = profond.* See Ex. XI. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>16</sup> *Aucun nom.* <sup>17</sup> *For* (preposition referring to time) is *depuis*, when meaning *since*, and *pendant*, when meaning *during*. In this case it is never *pour*. <sup>18</sup> See Ex. V. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>19</sup> See Ex. XXIV. Note <sup>11</sup>. <sup>20</sup> *Of widest range = à l'imagination la plus étendue.* <sup>21</sup> *Mighty-voiced = à la voix puissante.*

### XXXVIII.—LORD WELLINGTON TO GENERAL FREYRE.

The question<sup>2</sup> between these gentlemen and myself, is whether they shall or shall not pillage; and I have been obliged to adopt severe measures against the troops of General Morillo. I am sorry that these measures are displeasing<sup>3</sup> to the gentlemen; but the acts of which I complain<sup>4</sup> are much more dishonourable<sup>5</sup> to<sup>6</sup> them than the measures that they have rendered<sup>7</sup> necessary. . . .

General<sup>1</sup> Morillo has himself said to General<sup>1</sup> Hill that it<sup>8</sup> was impossible to prevent the mischief; that there was not a single soldier in the Spanish army who<sup>9</sup> had<sup>10</sup> not<sup>11</sup> received<sup>12</sup> letters<sup>13</sup> from his family in which they were enjoined<sup>14</sup> to take advantage<sup>15</sup> of the occasion and fill their pockets in France.

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>5</sup>. <sup>2</sup> *The question . . . whether = la question . . . de savoir si.* <sup>3</sup> See Ex. VII. Rule <sup>4</sup>. <sup>4</sup> *To complain = se plaindre.* *To pity = plaindre.* <sup>5</sup> *Dishonourable = déshonorant.* <sup>6</sup> See Ex. XXVIII. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>7</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>8</sup> See Ex. XVI. Note <sup>7</sup>. <sup>9</sup> See Ex. VII. Rule <sup>2</sup>. <sup>10</sup> **Rule.**—**The subjunctive mood is used after the relative pronouns qui, que,**

*dont, où, &c.* when they are preceded by *pas de, peu de, LE SEUL, l'unique, le premier, le dernier*, or by an adjective in the superlative relative degree. <sup>11</sup> *Not* is translated by *ne* only in a negative subordinate sentence depending on another negative sentence. <sup>12</sup> Past participles, used with the auxiliary *avoir*, do not agree with their direct objects, when the direct objects come after the past participles. <sup>13</sup> In negative sentences, the partitive article is *de* for masculine or feminine, singular or plural. <sup>14</sup> *To enjoin* = *enjoindre*. See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>. <sup>15</sup> *To take advantage of, to avail one's self of, to profit by* = *profiter de*.

## XXXIX.—DIFFICULTY AND IMPOSSIBILITY.

Dr.<sup>1</sup> Johnson was observed<sup>2</sup> by a <sup>Don de la acc.</sup> musical friend of his<sup>3</sup> to be very inattentive at a concert while a celebrated solo player<sup>4</sup> was giving an extraordinary performance upon his violin. His friend, to<sup>5</sup> induce him to take<sup>6</sup> greater notice of what<sup>7</sup> was going on,<sup>8</sup> told him how<sup>9</sup> extremely difficult it was. "Difficult, do you call it, sir?" replied the doctor; "I wish<sup>10</sup> it were impossible."

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>5</sup>. <sup>2</sup> Use the active form. <sup>3</sup> Translate, ~~one of his friends~~. <sup>4</sup> Literally translate, *while a celebrated artiste was playing an extraordinary solo upon the violin*. <sup>5</sup> See Ex. II. Note <sup>6</sup>. *To take notice of* = *faire attention à*. <sup>7</sup> *What* (that which) = *ce qui* (nom.), *ce que* (accus.). <sup>8</sup> *To be going on* = *se passer*. <sup>9</sup> *How*, before an adjective, is translated by *combien*, followed by the subject of the sentence, and by *que*, in exclamative sentences, also followed by the subject. See Ex. XXXV. Note <sup>10</sup>. <sup>10</sup> Use the conditional of the verb *vouloir*, followed by the subjunctive; whenever *I wish* means *I should like*.

## XL.—WHAT TO TAKE.

An old gentleman, who frequented <sup>a</sup> one of the coffee-houses,<sup>1</sup> being unwell, determined to make free<sup>2</sup> with the professional men who attended<sup>3</sup> occasionally, and steal an opinion on his case. Accordingly, seated per-

chance in the ~~same~~<sup>a</sup> box<sup>4</sup> with one<sup>5</sup> of the faculty, he inquired<sup>6</sup> what<sup>7</sup> he should<sup>8</sup> take for such a complaint, naming his own. "I will<sup>9</sup> tell you," replied the doctor, sarcastically, "you should take advice."<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Coffee-house = *café*. <sup>2</sup> To make free with = *agir sans façon avec*. <sup>3</sup> Qui venaient. <sup>4</sup> Cabinet. <sup>5</sup> Un membre. <sup>6</sup> Demander. <sup>7</sup> See Ex. XXXIX. Note <sup>7</sup>. <sup>8</sup> Should, ought to = *devoir*. <sup>9</sup> Translate take by *faire*. <sup>10</sup> Literally, I will say it to you. When *will* expresses an action that is to take place at once, the verb *aller* is used. Translate therefore, I am going to say it to you. <sup>10</sup> You should take advice (med.) = *Vous devriez consulter un médecin*.

## XII.—A PRESCRIPTION.

A physician, after<sup>1</sup> listening with torture to a pressing account of "symptoms" from a lady, who ailed<sup>2</sup> so little<sup>3</sup> that she was going to the opera that<sup>4</sup> evening, happily<sup>5</sup> escaped from the room, when he was<sup>6</sup> urgently requested to step<sup>7</sup> upstairs again; it<sup>8</sup> was to<sup>9</sup> ask him whether she might<sup>10</sup> eat some oysters. "Yes, Madam," said the physician, "shells and all."

<sup>1</sup> Translate, after having listened, and see Ex. IV. Note <sup>2</sup>, and Ex. XXXII. Note <sup>11</sup>. <sup>2</sup> Souffrir. <sup>3</sup> Little is *petit*, when an adjective, and *peu*, when an adverb. <sup>4</sup> That evening, that particular evening you speak of, *ce soir-là*. <sup>5</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>, and Ex. XI. Note <sup>8</sup>. <sup>7</sup> To step upstairs again = *remonter*. <sup>8</sup> See Ex. XVI. Note <sup>7</sup>. <sup>9</sup> See Ex. II. Note <sup>5</sup>. <sup>10</sup> See Ex. XXXIII. Note <sup>3</sup>.

## XLII.—A DISSENTER.

The other day a gentleman entered<sup>1</sup> an hotel in<sup>2</sup> Glasgow, and finding that the person who appeared to act as waiter could<sup>3</sup> not give him certain information which he wanted, put<sup>4</sup> the question: "Do you belong

to the establishment?" to which<sup>5</sup> Jeames replied: "No, sir, I belong to the Free Kirk."

<sup>1</sup> *To enter = entrer dans.* <sup>2</sup> See Ex. XVIII. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>3</sup> See Ex. XXXIII. Note <sup>4</sup>. <sup>4</sup> *To put a question = poser, faire une question.* <sup>5</sup> *Which (pron.) after a preposition is quot.*

### XLIII.—MURDER AND ASSAULT.

"You murder<sup>1</sup> time,"<sup>2</sup> said the leader of the band<sup>3</sup> at Drury Lane to Mr. Kemble, who was rehearsing a song in *Richard Cœur de Lion*. "Well, if I do,"<sup>4</sup> replied the tragedian, "I am more merciful than you, who are continually beating it."

<sup>1</sup> *Massacrer.* <sup>2</sup> *Time (music) = mesure (fem.).* <sup>3</sup> *Leader of the band = chef d'orchestre.* <sup>4</sup> *Translate: if I murder it.*

### XLIV.—IN GOING.

A merry fellow<sup>1</sup> one evening<sup>2</sup> told<sup>3</sup> one of his bottle companions that he intended<sup>4</sup> to leave the sum of £20 to<sup>5</sup> be spent at his funeral. His companion asked whether the said money was to<sup>6</sup> be spent in<sup>7</sup> going or returning, and was<sup>8</sup> answered: "Going,<sup>9</sup> to be sure;<sup>10</sup> for<sup>11</sup> when<sup>12</sup> you return,<sup>13</sup> I shall not be with you."

<sup>1</sup> *Bon vivant.* <sup>2</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>3</sup> *Said to.* <sup>4</sup> *To intend = avoir l'intention de.* <sup>5</sup> See Ex. II. Note <sup>6</sup>. <sup>6</sup> *Was to = devait.* See Ex. XVII. Note <sup>7</sup>. <sup>7</sup> *In going, whilst going = en allant.* <sup>8</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>9</sup>. <sup>9</sup> *Translate, in going, and see Note <sup>7</sup> above.* <sup>10</sup> *To be sure = assurément.* <sup>11</sup> See Ex. XXIV. Note <sup>12</sup>. <sup>12</sup> See Ex. XXVI. Note <sup>13</sup>. <sup>13</sup> *To return is retourner, when meaning to go back, and revenir, when meaning to come back.*



## XLV.—IDIOTS.

A journalist tells<sup>1</sup> the following<sup>2</sup>: "I have picked up a little story which I think too good to be<sup>3</sup> lost as a\* reproof for disturbers of the peace in churches. A certain dissenting minister was preaching in my neighbourhood and was much<sup>4</sup> annoyed by persons talking and giggling. He paused, looked at<sup>5</sup> the disturbers, and said: 'I am<sup>6</sup> always afraid to reprove those who misbehave in chapel. In the early<sup>7</sup> part of my ministry I made a great mistake. As I was preaching, a young man who sat<sup>8</sup> before<sup>9</sup> me<sup>10</sup> was constantly laughing, talking and making grimaces. I paused, and administered a severe rebuke. After the close of the service one of the official members came<sup>11</sup> and said to me: "Sir, you made a great mistake. That young man whom you reprovéd is an<sup>12</sup> idiot." Since then<sup>13</sup> I have always been afraid to reprove those who misbehave themselves in chapels, lest<sup>14</sup> I should repeat that mistake, and reprove another idiot.' During the rest of that service at least there was good order."

<sup>1</sup> Raconter. <sup>2</sup> Translate the following anecdote. <sup>3</sup> Take the active form with *on*, and the conjunction *pour que*, which governs the subjunctive. <sup>4</sup> Much, before a past participle, is translated by *très, fort, bien*; never by *beaucoup*. <sup>5</sup> To look at = *regarder*. <sup>6</sup> To be afraid to = *avoir peur de, craindre de*. <sup>7</sup> Dans les premières années. <sup>8</sup> *était assis* or *se trouvait assis*. <sup>9</sup> See Ex. XIX. Note <sup>9</sup>. <sup>10</sup> See Ex. XIII. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>11</sup> To go to some one, to come to some one (for a purpose) = *aller, venir trouver quelqu'un*. Came will be translated here by *vint me trouver*. <sup>12</sup> When a noun is used adjectively the indefinite article is not translated. Ex.: *I am a soldier* = *je suis soldat*. <sup>13</sup> Since then = *depuis ce temps-là*. <sup>14</sup> Lest, for fear that = *de peur que, de crainte que*, with the subjunctive and *ne* before the subjunctive. See Ex. XXVII. Note <sup>11</sup>.

## XLVI.—ALL LADIES.

Lord B—— had married<sup>1</sup> three wives, who had all been his servants. A beggar-woman<sup>2</sup> meeting him in

the street, made him<sup>3</sup> a very low<sup>4</sup> curtesy. "Bless<sup>5</sup> your lordship," said she, "and send you long life; if you do<sup>\*</sup> but<sup>\*</sup> live long<sup>6</sup> enough, we shall all be ladies in<sup>7</sup> time."

<sup>1</sup> *Épouser*. <sup>2</sup> *Beggar-woman = mendiante*. <sup>3</sup> *To him*. See Ex. II. Note <sup>7</sup>. <sup>4</sup> *Profond*, before the noun. Remark.—When adjectives are used both figuratively and literally, they generally come before the noun, when used figuratively; and after it, when used literally. Ex.: a low curtesy = *une profonde révérence*; a deep well = *un puits profond*. <sup>5</sup> Verb in the third person imperative. *Que Dieu bénisse*, &c. <sup>6</sup> *Long* is *long, longue*, when adjective, and *longtemps*, when adverb. Also see Ex. XIV. Note <sup>12</sup>. <sup>7</sup> *In time = à temps*. *In time* (with the help of time) = *avec le temps*.

## XLVII.—THEY DIE BUT ONCE. *fin*

An observing individual, in a very healthy village, seeing a sexton at work<sup>1</sup> in a hole in the ground, inquired<sup>2</sup> what<sup>3</sup> he was about.<sup>4</sup> "Digging<sup>5</sup> a grave, sir." "Digging a grave! Why,<sup>6</sup> I thought people<sup>7</sup> did not die often here, do they?"<sup>8</sup> "Oh, no, sir! they die but<sup>9</sup> once."

<sup>1</sup> *At work = à l'ouvrage*. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. XL. Note <sup>6</sup>. <sup>3</sup> See Ex. XXXIX. Note <sup>7</sup>. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. XXVI. Note <sup>7</sup>. <sup>5</sup> Translate, *I am digging a grave*. <sup>6</sup> *Mais, bah!* <sup>7</sup> See Ex. XXVI. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>8</sup> *Do they? = serais-je dans l'erreur?* <sup>9</sup> *But* meaning *only*, is rendered by *seulement* or *ne que, ne* before the verb and *que* after it.

## XLVIII.—LONG FACES. *fin*

"Barber," said a farmer to a tonsor, "now that corn is cheap, you ought<sup>1</sup> to shave for<sup>2</sup> half price." "I can't, Mr. Jones," said the hairdresser. "I ought really to charge<sup>3</sup> more;<sup>4</sup> for,<sup>5</sup> when corn is down,<sup>6</sup> farmers make such<sup>7</sup> long faces that I<sup>8</sup> have twice the ground to go over."

<sup>1</sup> *Devriez.* <sup>2</sup> *For half price = à moitié prix.* <sup>3</sup> *Prendre.* <sup>4</sup> See Ex. II. Note <sup>5</sup>. <sup>5</sup> See Ex. XXIV. Note <sup>2</sup>. After *car*, translate *when* by *lorsque*, not by *quand*, for the sake of euphony. <sup>6</sup> *Bon marché.* <sup>7</sup> Such is *si*, when followed by an adjective. Also remember that *de* (only) is the partitive article to be placed before an adjective, whether the noun be masculine or feminine, singular or plural. <sup>8</sup> *Que cela me donne deux fois plus d'ouvrage.*

XLIX. ~~ABOUT~~ THE POST-OFFICE.<sup>1</sup>

*A Miser's P. S.*—Excuse me for<sup>2</sup> not having put a stamp on my letter. I only thought of<sup>3</sup> it after<sup>4</sup> it was in the letter-box.

*Postage paid.\**—"Why did you charge<sup>5</sup> my son<sup>6</sup> three-pence for the letter I sent him?" said a peasant to the village postmaster. "Because you had<sup>7</sup> not paid the postage." "Not paid the postage! I beg<sup>8</sup> your pardon, I had,<sup>9</sup> here is<sup>10</sup> the receipt you gave me yourself." Here the peasant handed<sup>11</sup> the stamp.

<sup>1</sup> *Poste* (fem.) means *Post-office*; *poste* (masc.) means, *military post, police station.* <sup>2</sup> Translate, *if I have not put a stamp*; *a*, in a negative sentence, is translated by *de* (any). <sup>3</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>2</sup>. *Of it = en*; *at or to it = y*. These pronouns are placed immediately before the verb. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. XXXV. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>5</sup> See Ex. XLVIII. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>6</sup> *To his son.* Note.—When the direct and indirect objects are of equal length, the direct object must be placed first. When they are not of equal length, the shorter must be placed first. <sup>7</sup> *To pay the postage of a letter = affranchir une lettre.* <sup>8</sup> *I beg your pardon = Je vous demande pardon.* (*Vous* is here in the dative). <sup>9</sup> Translate, *I had paid the postage* and see Note <sup>7</sup> above. <sup>10</sup> *Here is, here are = voici* (vois ici), *there is, there are = voilà*, (vois là). <sup>11</sup> *Présenter.*

L.—GIN AND WATER.

A clamorous old lady inquired<sup>1</sup> of a gentleman seated next<sup>2</sup> to her at a scientific lecture: "Pray, sir, what<sup>3</sup>

does the lecturer mean<sup>4</sup> by oxy-gin and hydro-gin, and what<sup>5</sup> is the difference?" "Very little,<sup>6</sup> Madam," said he; "by oxy-gin, he means<sup>4</sup> pure gin; by hydro-gin, gin and water."

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. XL. Note <sup>6</sup>, with a dative. <sup>2</sup> Next to her = *près d'elle*. <sup>3</sup> What (pronoun) is *qu'est-ce qui*, when nominative, and *que* or *qu'est-ce que*, followed by the verb, when accusative. <sup>4</sup> What, after a preposition, is *quoi*. <sup>5</sup> To mean = *entendre, vouloir dire*. <sup>6</sup> What, adjective, is *quel*. <sup>7</sup> See Ex. XLI. Note <sup>2</sup>.

## LI.—A LADY ON TOM MOORE.

*Cherchez*  
*where is he*  
A correspondent who used to live<sup>1</sup> close to the residence of the late<sup>2</sup> Tom Moore, tells<sup>3</sup> the following anecdote: "Once<sup>4</sup> driving<sup>5</sup> home to Chippenham from Devizes, I took an old lady in the ~~trap~~, and in conversation I asked her if she saw<sup>6</sup> much of Tom Moore in her village, ~~when he was alive~~. "Tom Moore? Tom Moore, sir?" said she. "Oh! you mean<sup>7</sup> Mr. Moore. Mrs. Moore was a kind lady, but Mr. Moore used to write<sup>8</sup> all sorts of verses on the moon, and such<sup>9</sup> like things. He was no account."<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Used to live is the imperfect of *to live*. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. XIV. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>3</sup> See Ex. XLV. Note <sup>1</sup>. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>5</sup> To drive = *aller en voiture*; to take a drive = *faire une promenade en voiture*. In the same way to ride = *aller à cheval*, and to take a ride = *faire une promenade à cheval*. <sup>6</sup> To see much of = *connaître*. <sup>7</sup> See Ex. L. Note <sup>4</sup>. <sup>8</sup> Used to write is the imperfect indicative of *to write*. <sup>9</sup> Such like-things = *de pareilles choses*. <sup>10</sup> Il n'était rien de remarquable.

\*One day I have been coming home

## LII.—BODY AND SPIRIT.

A well-known city officer in<sup>1</sup> Auld Reekie was celebrated for his cunning and wit. His mother having<sup>2</sup> died in<sup>1</sup> Edinburgh, he hired a hearse and carried her to the family burying-place<sup>3</sup> in the Highlands. He

returned<sup>4</sup> with the hearse full of smuggled whiskey, and being teased<sup>5</sup> about it by a friend, he said: "Oh! man, there is no harm done, I only took away<sup>6</sup> the body and brought back<sup>7</sup> the spirit."

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. XVIII. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>3</sup> The verb *mourir* is used with the auxiliary *être*. <sup>4</sup> *Tombeau de famille*. <sup>5</sup> See Ex. XLIV. Note <sup>13</sup>. <sup>6</sup> Use the active voice. <sup>7</sup> *To take away* = *emmener*, speaking of persons and animals alive, and *emporter*, speaking of inanimate things. <sup>8</sup> *To bring back* = *ramener* or *rapporter*. See Note <sup>6</sup> above.

### LIII.—A DIFFICULTY.

A man bought a horse on<sup>1</sup> condition that he should pay half<sup>2</sup> down<sup>3</sup> and be in debt for<sup>4</sup> the remainder. A short time after the fellow demanded payment of the balance. The other answered: "No; it was agreed<sup>5</sup> that I should be in your debt for the remainder. How can that be if I pay it?"

<sup>1</sup> *On condition* = *à condition*. <sup>2</sup> *Half* (noun) = *moitié* (fem.), *half* (adjective) = *demi*, which agrees in gender with the noun, when it follows it, and does not, when it precedes it. Ex.: *Une demi livre*; *une livre et demie*. <sup>3</sup> *Down, ready money* = *comptant*. <sup>4</sup> *To be in debt for* = *devoir*. <sup>5</sup> *It was agreed* = *Il était convenu*.

### LIV.—TWENTY TIMES.

"I remember," says the celebrated Wesley, "hearing<sup>1</sup> my father say to my mother, 'How could<sup>2</sup> you have the patience to tell<sup>3</sup> that blockhead the same thing twenty times<sup>4</sup> over?' 'Why,' said she, 'if I had told<sup>3</sup> him only nineteen times, I should have lost all my labour.'"

<sup>1</sup> *Avoir entendu*. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. XXXIII. Note <sup>6</sup>. <sup>3</sup> *To tell over* = *répéter* (active). <sup>4</sup> *Twenty times* is an adverbial locution. See Ex. I. Note <sup>2</sup>.

## LV.—AN ERROR.

An amusing incident in<sup>1</sup> the House of Commons<sup>2</sup> is noticed by a London correspondent. The House was discussing the Civil Service estimates,<sup>3</sup> and in the vote for mining inspectors there was an item<sup>4</sup> for "clerical assistance." Thereupon<sup>5</sup> Mr. Muntz, of Birmingham, rose and objected. He did not, he said, know that the mining inspectors were such<sup>6</sup> very \* wicked people<sup>7</sup> that they required clergymen to be kept<sup>8</sup> to<sup>9</sup> look<sup>10</sup> specially<sup>11</sup> after their spiritual condition. The house roared,<sup>12</sup> and the honourable<sup>13</sup> member himself joined<sup>14</sup> as heartily<sup>15</sup> as any one in the laugh<sup>16</sup> when some of his friends near him<sup>17</sup> explained that by "clerical assistance" was<sup>18</sup> meant the assistance of clerks, not of clergymen.

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. V. Note <sup>5</sup>. <sup>2</sup> *Chambre des communes*. <sup>3</sup> *Budget*. <sup>4</sup> *Article*. <sup>5</sup> *Thereupon* = *là-dessus*. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. XLVIII. Note <sup>7</sup>. <sup>7</sup> See Ex. XXVI. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>8</sup> Translate *they required that one should keep clergymen*. *Require* governs the subjunctive mood. <sup>9</sup> See Ex. II. Note <sup>6</sup>. <sup>10</sup> *To look after* = *prendre soin de*. <sup>11</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>12</sup> *To roar with laughter* = *Rire à gorge déployée*. <sup>13</sup> *Honourable* here must precede the noun, it is used figuratively; See Ex. XLVI. Note <sup>4</sup>. <sup>14</sup> *To join in* = *prendre part à*. <sup>15</sup> *As heartily as any one* = *d'aussi bon cœur que tout le monde*. <sup>16</sup> *Hilarité générale*. <sup>17</sup> Translate, *who were near him*. <sup>18</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup> and Ex. L. Note <sup>4</sup>.

## LVI.—HIS OWN MEDICINE CHEST.<sup>1</sup>

The surgeon of an English ship-of-war used to prescribe<sup>2</sup> salt water for his patients<sup>3</sup> in all disorders.<sup>4</sup> Having sailed<sup>5</sup> one evening<sup>6</sup> he happened<sup>7</sup> to be drowned.

The captain, who had not heard of<sup>8</sup> the disaster, asked<sup>9</sup> one of the tars next day,<sup>10</sup> if he had heard of<sup>8</sup> the doctor. "Yes," answered Jack, "he was drowned<sup>11</sup> last night<sup>12</sup> in his own medicine-chest."

<sup>1</sup> *Coffre de médicaments*. <sup>2</sup> *To prescribe (med.)* = *ordonner*. <sup>3</sup> *Patient (med.)* = *malade*. <sup>4</sup> *Dérangement*. <sup>5</sup> *To sail* = *faire une promenade en mer or en bateau*. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>7</sup> *Il*

*lui arriva de se noyer.* <sup>8</sup> To hear (the sound) = *entendre.* To hear (to learn) = *apprendre.* To hear (say) = *entendre dire.* To hear of = *entendre parler de.* To hear from = *recevoir des nouvelles de.* <sup>9</sup> See Ex. XIII. Note <sup>12</sup>. <sup>10</sup> Next day = *le jour suivant.* See Ex. I. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>11</sup> To be, to get drowned = *se noyer.* See Ex. IX. Note <sup>11</sup>. <sup>12</sup> Last night = *hier au soir.*

## LVII.—FORGIVENESS.

Sir Walter Scott, in his article *the Quarterly Review* on the Culloden papers, mentions a characteristic instance of an old Highland warrior's mode of pardoning. "You must<sup>1</sup> forgive even your bitterest<sup>2</sup> enemy, Kenmuir," said the confessor to him,<sup>3</sup> as he lay<sup>4</sup> gasping on his death-bed. "Well, if I must,<sup>5</sup> I must,"<sup>6</sup> replied the chieftain; and, turning to<sup>6</sup> his son he added: "But my curse be<sup>7</sup> on you, Donald, if you forgive him."

<sup>1</sup> You must forgive = *vous devez pardonner à.* <sup>2</sup> Bitter enemy = *ennemi acharné.* <sup>3</sup> See Ex. II. Note <sup>7</sup>. <sup>4</sup> As he lay gasping on his death-bed = *au moment où il était couché, luttant contre la mort.* <sup>5</sup> Translate, if I must forgive him, I will do it. <sup>6</sup> To turn to = *se tourner vers.* <sup>7</sup> My curse be on you = *malheur à toi, que ma malédiction retombe sur toi.*

## LVIII.—A VERY LONG NOSE.

A gentleman having put out<sup>1</sup> a candle by accident one night,<sup>2</sup> ordered<sup>3</sup> his servant to light it again in the kitchen; adding: "But take care, James, that you<sup>4</sup> do not hit yourself in the dark."<sup>5</sup> Mindful of the caution, James stretched out<sup>6</sup> both arms at full length before<sup>7</sup> him, but unluckily, a door that stood<sup>8</sup> half open, passed between his hands and struck him<sup>9</sup> a woful blow upon the nose. "Good gracious!"<sup>10</sup> muttered he, when he recovered his senses a little,<sup>11</sup> "I always heard<sup>12</sup> that I had a very long nose, but I vow<sup>13</sup> I never thought<sup>14</sup> that it was longer than my arm!"

<sup>1</sup> To put out (fire, light) = *éteindre*. <sup>2</sup> One night = *un soir*. See Ex. I. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>3</sup> With the dative. <sup>4</sup> Translate, *not to hit yourself*; because the verb in the principal sentence is in the same person as that of the subordinate sentence. See Ex. XXVII. Note <sup>11</sup>. <sup>5</sup> Dark = *obscurité*. <sup>6</sup> Stretched out both arms = *étendit les deux bras*. <sup>7</sup> See Ex. XIX. Note <sup>9</sup>. <sup>8</sup> That stood half open = *qui était entr'ouverte*. <sup>9</sup> In the dative. See Ex. II. Note <sup>7</sup>. <sup>10</sup> *Sapristi!* <sup>11</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>3</sup>, and Ex. XLI. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>12</sup> Translate, *I have always heard*. See Ex. XI. Note <sup>8</sup> and Ex. LVI. Note <sup>8</sup>. <sup>13</sup> *Jurer*. <sup>14</sup> Translate, *never to have thought*. See Ex. XXVII. Note <sup>11</sup>.

## LIX.—EXAMINATION.

*Exam.* What<sup>1</sup> is the definition of inheritance?

*Boy.* Patrimony.

*Exam.* And what is patrimony?

*Boy.* Something<sup>2</sup> left by a father.

*Exam.* What would it be if<sup>3</sup> left by a mother?

*Boy.* Matrimony,<sup>4</sup> I suppose, sir.

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. L. Note <sup>5</sup>. <sup>2</sup> *Rien, quelqu'un*, and *quelque chose* require *de* before the adjective or participle used adjectively which follows. *Ex.* : *Rien de bon, nothing good; quelqu'un de tué, somebody killed; quelque chose de cassé, something broken.* *Chose* is feminine, but *quelque chose* is a masculine compound noun. *Quelque chose* is feminine, however, when it means *anything whatever*. <sup>3</sup> Translate, *if we were left*. <sup>4</sup> No joke will exist in French, as *matrimony* is marriage. I should suggest a neologism (*matrimoine*).

## LX.—CUTTING OUT THE THIRD ACT.

Mr. Byron's name is associated with<sup>1</sup> a witty story. When one of his plays was brought out<sup>2</sup> at Liverpool, an awful "wait"<sup>3</sup> occurred after the second act. The orchestra played, and played again. Presently<sup>4</sup> a harsh grating<sup>5</sup> sound was heard<sup>6</sup> behind—something<sup>7</sup> like sawing. Some one asked<sup>8</sup> the author what<sup>9</sup> it<sup>10</sup> meant.<sup>11</sup> "I can't say,"<sup>12</sup> he answered<sup>13</sup> sadly. "I suppose they are cutting out\* the third act."



<sup>1</sup> *a.* <sup>2</sup> *To bring out* (theat.) = *représenter*. <sup>3</sup> *Pause*. <sup>4</sup> *Tout-à-coup*. <sup>5</sup> *A harsh grating sound* = *un bruit*; then see Note <sup>7</sup> below. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>. <sup>7</sup> *Something like sawing* = *pareil (un bruit) à celui que l'on fait quand on scie quelque chose*. <sup>8</sup> See Ex. XIII. Note <sup>11</sup>. <sup>9</sup> See Ex. XXXIX. Note <sup>7</sup>. <sup>10</sup> *Cela*. <sup>11</sup> See Ex. L. Note <sup>4</sup>. <sup>12</sup> *Je ne saurais le dire* or *je ne peux pas vous le dire*. <sup>13</sup> See Ex. IX. Note <sup>10</sup>.

---

## LXI.—INCONVENIENCE

On<sup>1</sup> the last night of Macready's engagement at Paris he performed Othello, and when he was called<sup>2</sup> before<sup>3</sup> the curtain, a number<sup>4</sup> of his French audience<sup>5</sup> leaped on the stage and overwhelmed<sup>6</sup> him with<sup>7</sup> embraces. This *épanchement du cœur*, as they say, brought its inconveniences, and many faces showed the effect of their contact with that<sup>8</sup> of the Moor.

<sup>1</sup> Translate, *Macready, on the last night of his engagement at Paris, performed, &c.* <sup>2</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>. <sup>3</sup> See Ex. XIX. Note <sup>9</sup>. <sup>4</sup> *Un grand nombre*. <sup>5</sup> *Number*, a collective, cannot be followed by *audience*, another collective. *A number of his French audience* should be translated by *un grand nombre de Français qui assistaient à la représentation*. <sup>6</sup> *Accablé*. <sup>7</sup> See Ex. XII. Note <sup>9</sup>. <sup>8</sup> Demonstrative pronoun *celui, celle, ceux, celles*.

---

## LXII.—I WILL RETURN<sup>1</sup> ANON.

Mr. Dickens used to relate<sup>2</sup> with much humour a little scene he witnessed<sup>3</sup> at the Rochester theatre. An actor had forgotten his part,<sup>4</sup> and could<sup>5</sup> not get<sup>6</sup> the prompter to give him the "*word*." After many adjurations, and the usual appeals to his own invention, he assumed<sup>7</sup> a tragic port,<sup>8</sup> addressed<sup>9</sup> his companion with, "I will<sup>10</sup> return<sup>11</sup> anon," and stalked<sup>12</sup> off the stage to<sup>13</sup> seek the neglectful prompter.

<sup>1</sup> *Je reviens à l'instant*. <sup>2</sup> The imperfect of *Raconter* or *avait l'habitude de raconter*. <sup>3</sup> *To witness* = *être témoin de*. <sup>4</sup> *Rôle*

(masc.) <sup>5</sup> See Ex. XXXIII. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>6</sup> *Get the prompter to give him the word* = *Se faire donner le mot par le souffleur*. <sup>7</sup> *Prendre*. <sup>8</sup> *Posture* (fem.) <sup>9</sup> *Dit à*. <sup>10</sup> Write the verb in the present, as the future action will take place at once, or else use *je vais*. See Note <sup>1</sup> above. <sup>11</sup> See Ex. XLIV. Note <sup>13</sup>. <sup>12</sup> *He stalked off the stage* = *Il quitta la scène à pas majestueux*. <sup>13</sup> See Ex. II. Note <sup>5</sup>.

## LXIII.—LITERAL.

Excellent  
begin to  
Once, when John Kemble played<sup>1</sup> Hamlet in the country,<sup>2</sup> the gentleman who enacted Guildenstern was, or imagined himself<sup>3</sup> to be, a capital musician. Hamlet asks him: "Will you play upon<sup>4</sup> this pipe?" "My lord, I cannot."<sup>5</sup> "I pray<sup>6</sup> you." "Believe me, I cannot."<sup>5</sup> "I do beseech<sup>7</sup> you." "Well, if your lordship insists on<sup>\*</sup> it, I shall do as well as<sup>8</sup> I can;" and, to the confusion of Hamlet, and the great amusement of the audience,<sup>9</sup> he played God save the King.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Was playing (the imperfect). <sup>2</sup> In the country = *en province*. Country = *pays*, when it means the whole land, and *campagne*, when it means the villages, the fields. <sup>3</sup> *S'imaginer*. <sup>4</sup> *Jouer* (before the name of an instrument), requires *de*. <sup>5</sup> I cannot = *Cela m'est impossible*. <sup>6</sup> I pray you = *Je vous en prie*. <sup>7</sup> I do beseech you = *Oh! je vous en supplie*. <sup>8</sup> Translate, I shall do my best. To do one's best = *Faire de son mieux*. <sup>9</sup> See Ex. XI. Note <sup>5</sup>. <sup>10</sup> The verb *save* in the 3rd person imperative.

## LXIV.—A DISCOUNTESS.

English in  
mainten  
At a party<sup>1</sup> given by a great banker, who had made<sup>2</sup> millions on government securities,<sup>3</sup> a witty lady pointed out<sup>4</sup> to her companion, also a banker, the wife of the host, remarking: "What a<sup>5</sup> splendid creature! she ought<sup>6</sup> to be a<sup>7</sup> countess!" "Oh! yes, beautiful enough,<sup>8</sup> but perhaps<sup>9</sup> she prefers to be a discountess."

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. XXII. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>2</sup> To make money = *gagner de l'argent*. <sup>3</sup> *Valeurs garanties par le gouvernement*. <sup>4</sup> *Fit remarquer*. <sup>5</sup> What a. In exclamative sentences, *what* only is translated. See Ex. L. Note <sup>5</sup>. <sup>6</sup> *Devrait*. <sup>7</sup> See Ex. XLV. Note <sup>12</sup>. <sup>8</sup> See Ex. XIV. Note <sup>13</sup>. <sup>9</sup> See Ex. XXVII. Note <sup>13</sup>.

## LXV.—VERY POOR.

à \$ ces  
 One of the unfortunate juveniles who visit the hotels and solicit pennies was asked,<sup>1</sup> "Where is your<sup>2</sup> mother?" She answered, diffidently, "She is dead." "Have you no<sup>3</sup> father?" "Yes, sir, but he is sick." "What<sup>4</sup> ails<sup>5</sup> him?" continued the questioner. "He has got a sore finger,<sup>6</sup> sir." "Indeed?" "Yes, sir." "Why does he not cut it off, \* then?" "Please, sir," responded the little maid, "he has not got \* any<sup>3</sup> money to<sup>7</sup> buy a knife." *ai ment*

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>. <sup>2</sup> The child is spoken to in the second person singular. <sup>3</sup> When a sentence is negative, the partitive article is simply *de*, for masculine or feminine, for singular or plural. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. L. Note <sup>1</sup>. <sup>5</sup> Literally translate, *what has he?* <sup>6</sup> *He has got a sore finger = Il a mal à un doigt.* Cf. *J'ai mal à la tête, I have a head ache; j'ai mal au cœur, I feel sick; j'ai mal au pied, I have a sore foot, &c.* <sup>7</sup> See Ex. II. Note <sup>6</sup>.

## LXVI.—TWO BROTHERS DENTISTS.

Two brothers, who were very successful<sup>1</sup> dentists, built<sup>2</sup> a very large and handsome house, which was thought<sup>3</sup> to resemble<sup>4</sup> a large molar tooth in shape.<sup>5</sup> It was a common remark: "See what<sup>6</sup> brothers can do when they pull together."

<sup>1</sup> *Qui avaient beaucoup de succès comme dentistes.* <sup>2</sup> *Built = firent bâtir*, as they did not build it themselves. <sup>3</sup> *Was thought, selon l'opinion générale.* <sup>4</sup> *Ressembler à.* <sup>5</sup> *Par la forme.* <sup>6</sup> See Ex. XXXIX. Note <sup>7</sup>.

## LXVII.—ERSKINE AND THELWALL.

Thelwall, when<sup>1</sup> on his trial<sup>2</sup> for treason in 1792, kept up<sup>3</sup> an incessant correspondence with his counsel. Dissatisfied with<sup>4</sup> a part of his case, he passed a slip of

paper, "I will plead my own cause;" to which<sup>5</sup> Erskine scribbled,<sup>6</sup> "If you do,<sup>7</sup> you'll be<sup>8</sup> hanged." To which<sup>5</sup> Thelwall gave the following rejoinder, "Then, I'll be<sup>9</sup> hanged if I do.<sup>10</sup>"

<sup>1</sup> Translate, *when he was*. <sup>2</sup> *On his trial* = *mis en jugement*.  
<sup>3</sup> *To keep up an incessant correspondence* = *correspondre continuellement*. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. XII. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>5</sup> See Ex. XLII. Note <sup>5</sup>.  
<sup>6</sup> *Griffonner*. <sup>7</sup> Translate, *If you do that (cela)*. <sup>8</sup> Ordinary future of *to be*. <sup>9</sup> Stress is impressed on *will*. Use the verb *vouloir* with the infinitive of *être*; or else say *que je sois pendu*.  
<sup>10</sup> Translate, *if I do it*.

### LXVIII.—THE FORCE OF TRUTH.

Dreadful limits are set<sup>1</sup> in nature to the powers<sup>2</sup> of dissimulation. Truth tyrannises over<sup>3</sup> the unwilling members of the body. Faces never lie, it is said.<sup>4</sup> No man<sup>5</sup> need be deceived who will study the changes of expression. When a man speaks<sup>6</sup> the truth in the spirit of truth, his eye is as clear as the heavens. When he has base ends,<sup>7</sup> and<sup>8</sup> speaks falsely, his eye is muddy,<sup>9</sup> and sometimes asquint. I have heard<sup>10</sup> an experienced counsellor say, that he never feared the effect upon a jury of a lawyer who does not believe in his heart<sup>11</sup> that his client ought to have a verdict.<sup>12</sup>—EMERSON'S *Essays on Spiritual Laws*.

<sup>1</sup> *Imposer*. <sup>2</sup> *Force* (sing.) <sup>3</sup> *To tyrannise over* = *tyranniser*.  
<sup>4</sup> Translate, *It is said that, &c.*, and see Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>.  
<sup>5</sup> Translate, *A man who will study the changes of expression, &c.* See Ex. VII. Note <sup>2</sup>, (Rule). <sup>6</sup> *Parler* is a neuter verb, except in the expression, *Parler une langue*. *To speak the truth* = *Dire la vérité*. <sup>7</sup> *Motif*. When an adjective precedes a noun, taken in a partitive sense, the article is simply *de*. <sup>8</sup> See Ex. XVII. Note <sup>5</sup>.  
<sup>9</sup> *Trouble*. <sup>10</sup> See Ex. LVI. Note <sup>8</sup>. <sup>11</sup> *In his heart* = *en conscience*. <sup>12</sup> *To have a verdict* = *gagner sa cause*.

*End*

### LXIX.—GARRICK'S END.

Garrick, a few<sup>1</sup> hours before<sup>2</sup> his death, became a little<sup>3</sup> clouded<sup>4</sup> in his faculties. He noticed<sup>5</sup> that the

room was<sup>6</sup> full of strange figures gliding about,<sup>7</sup> and in his half-waking state asked who they were. He was told<sup>8</sup> they<sup>9</sup> were physicians, and, indeed, the first doctors in<sup>10</sup> London had crowded<sup>11</sup> to his bedside.<sup>12</sup> The dying actor raised his<sup>13</sup> head and was heard<sup>14</sup> to mutter :—

“ Another and another still succeeds,  
And the last fool is welcome as<sup>15</sup> the former.”

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. XXI. Note <sup>5</sup>. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. XIX. Note <sup>9</sup>. <sup>3</sup> See Ex. XLI. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>4</sup> *Obscurcir*. <sup>5</sup> *Remarquer*, in the perfect (narrative). <sup>6</sup> Imperfect. The room was full at the time when he noticed. See Ex. XVIII. Note <sup>6</sup>. (Remark). <sup>7</sup> *Passer rapidement*. <sup>8</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>. <sup>9</sup> See Ex. XIII. Note <sup>14</sup>. <sup>10</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>6</sup>. The adjectives, *premier*, *dernier*, *unique*, *seul*, are considered as superlatives. <sup>11</sup> *Se presser en foule*. See Ex. IX. Note <sup>11</sup>. <sup>12</sup> *Bedside* = *chevet* (masc.) <sup>13</sup> *la*. <sup>14</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>. <sup>15</sup> *Is welcome as* = *est aussi bienvenu que*.

## LXX.—OLIVER BASSELIN AND THE ORIGIN OF THE WORD “VAUDEVILLE.”

In the valley of the Vire

Still is seen<sup>1</sup> an ancient mill,  
With its<sup>2</sup> gables quaint and queer,  
And beneath the window-sill,  
On the stone,

These words alone :  
“ Oliver Basselin lived here.”

Oliver Basselin, the “*Père joyeux du Vaudeville*,” flourished<sup>3</sup> in the<sup>4</sup> fifteenth century; and gave to his convivial<sup>5</sup> songs the name of his native valleys, in which he sang them : Vaux-de-Vire. This name<sup>6</sup> was afterwards corrupted into the modern “*Vaudeville*.”—LONG-FELLOW.

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>. <sup>2</sup> *With its* = *aux*. <sup>3</sup> The verb *Fleurir*, to blossom, is regular in its literal sense; but when it is used figuratively, signifying to be in a prosperous state, to flourish, it makes *florissant* in the present participle and *florissais* in the imperfect of the indicative. <sup>4</sup> *In the* = *au*. <sup>5</sup> *Joyeux*. *Chansons à boire* or *chansons de table*.

## *Omit* LXXI.—BEARDING A BARBER.

A Highlander who sold<sup>1</sup> brooms went into<sup>2</sup> a barber's shop in Glasgow to<sup>3</sup> get shaved.<sup>4</sup> The barber bought one of his brooms, and, after having<sup>5</sup> shaved him,<sup>6</sup> asked<sup>7</sup> him the price of it.<sup>8</sup> "Twopence," said the Highlander. "No, no," said the shaver; "I will<sup>9</sup> give you a penny, and if that does not satisfy you, take<sup>10</sup> your broom again." The Highlander took it, and asked what<sup>11</sup> he had to pay. "A penny," said the barber. "I will<sup>9</sup> give you a bawbee, and if that does not satisfy you, *put on*<sup>12</sup> my beard again."

<sup>1</sup> Was selling, used to sell, (imperfect). <sup>2</sup> To go in = *entrer dans*. <sup>3</sup> See Ex. II. Note <sup>5</sup>. <sup>4</sup> to get shaved = *se faire raser*. <sup>5</sup> See Ex. IV. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>4</sup>. <sup>7</sup> See Ex. XIII. Note <sup>11</sup>. <sup>8</sup> Of it = *en*, must be placed immediately before the verb. <sup>9</sup> See Ex. XL. Note <sup>9</sup>. <sup>10</sup> To take again = *Reprendre*. <sup>11</sup> See Ex. XXXIX. Note <sup>7</sup>. <sup>12</sup> To put on = *mettre, placer*. To put on again = *remettre, remplacer, remettre en place*.

## *Finish* LXXII.—THE SCHOOL FOR SCANDAL.

Although<sup>1</sup> it must ever rank<sup>2</sup> as a finished piece<sup>3</sup> in the simplicity of plot,<sup>4</sup> in the natural progression of incident, in the faithful imitation of manners, in the vigorous and exact delineation of living characters, and, above all,<sup>5</sup> in fertility of wit and felicity of expression, it is to be regretted,<sup>6</sup> that the author did<sup>7</sup> not apply<sup>8</sup> himself with more<sup>9</sup> care to improve the heart, and stimulate the public mind to the cultivation of morality.

The fashionable taste for scandal is indeed exposed, but it is exposed to the laughter, not to the contempt and detestation of the audience.<sup>10</sup> It produces mirth, but does not excite execration. The hypocrite, who covers his abominable designs with<sup>11</sup> the mask of honour and integrity, is indeed punished; but the punishment is not commensurate to the offence. . . . J. W. LAKE.

<sup>1</sup> *Although* = *quoique, bien que*, with the subjunctive mood.  
<sup>2</sup> *To rank* (neuter) = *être considéré*. <sup>3</sup> *finished piece* = *pièce accomplie, comédie parfaite*. <sup>4</sup> *Plot* (theat.) = *intrigue* (fem.)  
<sup>5</sup> *Above all* = *surtout*. <sup>6</sup> *Translate, one must regret, on doit regretter*. <sup>7</sup> See Rule Ex. VII. Note <sup>4</sup>. <sup>8</sup> *To apply one's self to* = *s'appliquer à*. Reflexive verbs generally require *à* before the infinitive which follows them. <sup>9</sup> See Rule Ex. XI. Note <sup>17</sup>.  
<sup>10</sup> See Ex. XI. Note <sup>6</sup>. <sup>11</sup> See Ex. XII. Note <sup>9</sup>.

### LXXIII.—A LOSS.

A few<sup>1</sup> days after Dickens's death an Englishman, deeply grieved at<sup>2</sup> the event, made a sort of pilgrimage to Gad's Hill—to the home of the great novelist. He went into<sup>3</sup> the famous "Sir John Falstaff" inn near at hand,<sup>4</sup> and, in the effusiveness of his honest<sup>5</sup> emotions, he could<sup>6</sup> not avoid taking<sup>7</sup> the waiter into his confidence. "A great loss this<sup>8</sup> of Mr. Dickens," said the pilgrim. "A great loss to<sup>9</sup> us, sir," replied the waiter, deeply moved; "he had<sup>10</sup> all his ale sent in (from this house!)"

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. XXI. Note <sup>5</sup>. <sup>2</sup> *De*. <sup>3</sup> See Ex. LXXI. Note <sup>2</sup>.  
<sup>4</sup> *Near at hand* = *qui se trouve tout près de l'endroit*. <sup>5</sup> See Ex. XLVI. Note <sup>4</sup>. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. XXXIII. Note <sup>3</sup>. **Rule.**—*Pas* and *point* may be suppressed after the verbs *cesser*, *to cease*; *oser*, *to dare*; and *pouvoir*, *to be able*. When the negative, however, has to be strong, *pas* must be expressed. *Ne pas pouvoir*, for instance, expresses complete impossibility; *ne pouvoir* is much less strong. <sup>7</sup> *S'empêcher de mettre*. <sup>8</sup> *Que celle*.  
<sup>9</sup> *Pour*. <sup>10</sup> *He had all his ale sent in* = *il se faisait envoyer toute sa bière*.

### LXXIV.—NOT TAKEN IN.<sup>1</sup>

A gentleman was riding<sup>2</sup> on the outside<sup>3</sup> of a country coach,<sup>4</sup> when the driver said to him: "I have a coin which is two hundred years old.<sup>5</sup> Did you<sup>6</sup> ever see a coin two hundred years old?" "Oh, yes, I have one<sup>7</sup> myself, which is two thousand years old." "Ah! have you?"<sup>8</sup> said the driver, and he spoke no more<sup>9</sup> during

the rest of the journey. When the coach arrived at its destination, the driver came up<sup>10</sup> to the gentleman with<sup>11</sup> an intensely self-satisfied<sup>12</sup> air, and said: "I told you, as<sup>13</sup> we drove along, that I had a coin two hundred years old." "Yes." "And you told me you had one<sup>14</sup> two thousand years old." "Yes." "Now,<sup>15</sup> it's a lie." "What do you mean<sup>16</sup> by that?" "What do I mean? Why, it's only<sup>17</sup> 1869 now."

*P. 111* <sup>1</sup> *Dupé, trompé, attrapé.* <sup>2</sup> *Voyageait.* Verbs in *ger* take an *e* mute after the *g*, when that consonant is followed by the vowel *a* or *o*, in order that the *g* may preserve its soft sound (that of the infinitive). <sup>3</sup> *Outside* (of a coach, omnibus, &c.) is *impériale*, (fem.) or *banquette* (fem.) <sup>4</sup> *Coach, stage-coach = diligence* (fem.) <sup>5</sup> *to be so many years old = avoir tant d'ans; être âgé de tant d'ans.* The second expression refers only to persons or animals. <sup>6</sup> *Translate, Have you ever seen, &c.* <sup>7</sup> *One, in French one of them, the noun being understood after one. Of it, of them = en, pronoun, which must be placed before the verb.* <sup>8</sup> *Have you? = vraiment.* <sup>9</sup> See Ex. XXII. Note <sup>10</sup>. <sup>10</sup> See Ex. XLV. Note <sup>11</sup>. <sup>11</sup> See Ex. XII. Note <sup>9</sup>. <sup>12</sup> *Intensely self-satisfied = des plus satisfaits.* <sup>13</sup> *As we drove along = sur la route, chemin faisant.* <sup>14</sup> See Note <sup>7</sup> above. <sup>15</sup> *Hé bien!* <sup>16</sup> See Ex. XXXIX. Note <sup>7</sup>, and Ex. L. Note <sup>4</sup>. <sup>17</sup> *Translate we are only in (en).*

## LXXV.—ON LORD ERSKINE.

Dr. Parr and Erskine were very fond of<sup>1</sup> bandying<sup>2</sup> compliments between each other.<sup>3</sup> Parr once told the latter that, if he survived<sup>4</sup> him, he would write his epitaph. "You are wrong<sup>5</sup> to say that, Doctor," replied Erskine, "for<sup>6</sup> you hold<sup>7</sup> out to me an inducement to commit suicide."

Erskine had a most singular *penchant* for witnessing<sup>8</sup> fires, and has been known<sup>9</sup> to leave the House of Commons in the midst<sup>10</sup> of a debate on<sup>11</sup> hearing<sup>12</sup> that a conflagration was to be seen<sup>13</sup> within a mile. Sheridan said that a chimney could<sup>14</sup> not smoke in the Borough without<sup>15</sup> Erskine's knowledge.



<sup>1</sup> *To be fond of* = *aimer à*; *To be very fond of* = *aimer beaucoup à*. <sup>2</sup> *Renvoyer*. <sup>3</sup> With *each other*, the verb must be reflexive. *Between each other* = *l'un à l'autre*. Remark.—*L'un l'autre* is used with reference to two, and *les uns les autres* with reference to more than two. When there is a preposition before *each other* it must be placed in French between *l'un* and *l'autre* or *les uns* and *les autres*. <sup>4</sup> *Survivre* is neuter. <sup>5</sup> *To be wrong to* = *avoir tort de*; *to be right to* = *avoir raison de*; *to have a right to* = *avoir le droit de*; *to be entitled to* = *avoir droit à*. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. XXIV. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>7</sup> *To hold out* = *offrir*. <sup>8</sup> *For witnessing*. See Ex. XXIV. Note <sup>3</sup>; Ex. IV. Note <sup>2</sup>. *To witness* = *voir, assister à*. *Fire will be here* *incendie*. <sup>9</sup> Translate, and one knows that. <sup>10</sup> *In the midst* = *au milieu*. <sup>11</sup> *En*. See Ex. IV. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>12</sup> See Ex. LVI. Note <sup>8</sup>. <sup>13</sup> Translate, that one could see a conflagration within a mile. See Ex. XXXIII. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>14</sup> See Ex. XXXIII. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>15</sup> *Without Erskine's knowledge* = *qu'Erskine ne le sût*. *Sât* is in the subjunctive, because in this sentence *que* stands for *sans que*, which requires the subjunctive. As for *ne*, See Ex. XXXVIII. Note <sup>11</sup>.

## LXXVI.—ON QUIN.

A gentleman had helped himself to<sup>1</sup> an enormous piece of bread, which Quin attempted to take. “Sir, that is my bread,” said the gentleman. “Oh! I beg<sup>2</sup> your pardon,” said Quin, humbly, “I thought<sup>3</sup> it<sup>4</sup> was the loaf.”<sup>5</sup>

Quin and Mrs. Pritchard performed as<sup>6</sup> Chaumont and Monimia in Otway's pathetic play of *The Orphan*. Both<sup>7</sup> were old, and very bulky<sup>8</sup> in their figures, and nothing<sup>9</sup> could<sup>10</sup> have been more ludicrous than to<sup>11</sup> hear Quin mouthing out:<sup>12</sup>

“Two unhappy orphans, alas! we are.”

But both<sup>13</sup> were so respected, and had such<sup>14</sup> dignity, that the audience<sup>15</sup> listened with the utmost gravity.

<sup>1</sup> *To help one's self to* (at table) = *Se servir, prendre*. *To help some one to* = *Offrir . . . à quelqu'un*. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. XLIX. Note <sup>8</sup>. <sup>3</sup> Use *croire* in the imperfect of the indicative (I was thinking). <sup>4</sup> See Ex. XIII. Note <sup>14</sup>. <sup>5</sup> *Loaf* being *pain*, the same as *bread*, translate *loaf* by *le pain tout entier*. <sup>6</sup> *To perform*

*as* = *Jouer le rôle de*, or simply *faire*. <sup>7</sup> *Both were old* = *Ils étaient vieux tous les deux*. <sup>8</sup> *Translate, and their corpulency was enormous*. <sup>9</sup> After *rien* the verb must be preceded by *ne*. <sup>10</sup> See Ex. XXXIII. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>11</sup> After *que* (*than*), the infinitive must be preceded by *de*. <sup>12</sup> *To mouth out* = *vociférer*. <sup>13</sup> *Translate, they were so respected both*, and see Note <sup>7</sup> above. <sup>14</sup> *Tant de* (so much). <sup>15</sup> See Ex. XI. Note <sup>6</sup>.

## LXXVII.—PREFACE TO "THE LIFE OF AN OYSTER, WRITTEN BY HIMSELF."

How can an oyster write? Gentle reader, if you begin with <sup>1</sup> such <sup>2</sup> an impertinent query, pestering me on the very <sup>3</sup> threshold with your supercilious scepticism, you would do better to seek an amusement and instruction elsewhere. <sup>4</sup> Recollect how <sup>5</sup> easy it is to ask questions, and how <sup>6</sup> difficult it often is to answer <sup>7</sup> them. Do you think that none write <sup>8</sup> but those who can <sup>9</sup> write? If so, <sup>10</sup> you had better <sup>11</sup> go and \* read, and you will soon be convinced of your error.—*Athenæum*.

<sup>1</sup> *To begin with* = *Commencer par*. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. XLVIII. Note <sup>7</sup>. <sup>3</sup> *Même*, before the noun, means *same*, *même*, after the noun, means *very*. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>5</sup> See Ex. XXXIX. Note <sup>9</sup>. <sup>6</sup> *To ask questions* = *Faire des questions*. The verb *faire* is generally used in French to avoid tautologies. For instance; *to take prisoners* = *faire des prisonniers*; *to dream a dream* = *faire un rêve*. However, *to fight a battle* is *livrer une bataille*; and *to gain a victory* is *remporter une victoire*. <sup>7</sup> *Answer* = *répondre à*. *To it or to them* = *y*, which must be placed before the verb. <sup>8</sup> **Rule.**—After an interrogation, and after a verb accompanied by a negation, the subjunctive must be used. <sup>9</sup> Use the verb *savoir*. <sup>10</sup> *If so, if it is so* = *s'il en est ainsi*. <sup>11</sup> *You had better* = *Vous ferez bien de*.

## LXXVIII.—SHARP GIRL.

An ignorant housemaid who had to call a gentleman to <sup>1</sup> dinner, found him engaged in <sup>2</sup> using a tooth-brush. "Well, is he coming?" <sup>3</sup> said the lady of the house, when the servant returned. <sup>4</sup> "Yes, ma'am, directly," was the reply; "he is just <sup>5</sup> sharpening <sup>6</sup> his <sup>7</sup> teeth."

<sup>1</sup> Pour le. <sup>2</sup> Occupé à. See Ex. IV. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>3</sup> See Ex. II. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. XLIV. Note <sup>12</sup>. <sup>5</sup> Il est en train de. <sup>6</sup> To sharpen = *aiguiser*. <sup>7</sup> Rule.—The part of the body or faculty of the mind is preceded by the article, and not by the possessive adjective. A personal pronoun in the dative, representing the person whose part of the body or faculty of the mind is acted upon, is placed before the verb. Ex.: I am washing my hands = *Je me lave les mains*. I am washing his hands = *Je lui lave les mains*. If the person who suffers the action expressed by the verb, has not been named; instead of placing a personal pronoun in the dative before the verb, the noun of person in the dative, comes after the verb. Ex.: They cut off the heads of their prisoners = *Ils coupent la tête à leurs prisonniers*; I am washing Henry's hands = *Je lave les mains à Henri*.

### LXXIX.—A COMPLIMENT.

During his first success at Drury Lane, Kean overheard<sup>1</sup> a knot<sup>2</sup> of old stage carpenters, discussing the various performers<sup>3</sup> they had seen<sup>4</sup> in their day.<sup>5</sup> "Well," said one, "you may talk of Henderson and Kemble, and this new man, but give me Bannister. He had always done<sup>6</sup> twenty minutes sooner than any one<sup>7</sup> of 'em."<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> To overhear = *entendre par hasard*. <sup>2</sup> Groupe (masc.) <sup>3</sup> Acteurs, comédiens. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>5</sup> Temps. <sup>6</sup> Fini. <sup>7</sup> Aucun. <sup>8</sup> See Ex. XIII. Note <sup>2</sup>.

### LXXX.—A KIND REQUEST.

Macklin, when<sup>1</sup> sitting at the back<sup>2</sup> of the boxes,<sup>3</sup> was prevented<sup>4</sup> from seeing the stage by a gentleman who stood up<sup>5</sup> in front. He tapped him with his stick on the shoulder, and addressed<sup>6</sup> him with the most studious politeness: "When anything<sup>7</sup> entertaining occurs on the stage, perhaps<sup>8</sup> you will let<sup>9</sup> me and my friend know; for<sup>10</sup> you see, my dear sir, that at present we must<sup>11</sup> totally depend upon<sup>12</sup> your kindness."

<sup>1</sup> Translate, *when Macklin was sitting, &c.* <sup>2</sup> *At the back of* = *derrière*. <sup>3</sup> *Box* (theat.) = *loge* (fem.). <sup>4</sup> Take the active form, *and a gentleman who . . . prevented him . . .* <sup>5</sup> *To stand up* = *se tenir debout*. <sup>6</sup> *Parler* (neuter). <sup>7</sup> See Ex. LIX. Note <sup>2</sup>. <sup>8</sup> See Ex. XXVII. Note <sup>12</sup>. <sup>9</sup> *To let some one know* = *Faire savoir quelque chose à quelqu'un*. <sup>10</sup> See Ex. XXIV. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>11</sup> Use *devoir*. <sup>12</sup> *To depend on* = *Compter sur, dépendre de*.

\* *Le . . .* adby . . .

### *Compt* LXXXI.—A WESTERN EDITOR.<sup>1</sup>

In one of our largest cities, a short time ago,<sup>2</sup> the editor of a newspaper was met by a friend, who, taking him by the hand, exclaimed: "I am delighted to see you. How long<sup>3</sup> are you going to stay?" "Well,<sup>4</sup> I think," said the editor, "I shall stay while<sup>5</sup> my money lasts."<sup>6</sup> "How<sup>7</sup> disappointed I am!" said his friend; "I hoped<sup>8</sup> you were going to<sup>9</sup> stay a day or two."

<sup>1</sup> *Editor* (of a paper) = *rédacteur en chef; éditeur*, in French, means *publisher*. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. V. Note <sup>7</sup>. <sup>3</sup> *How long* = *combien de temps*. <sup>4</sup> *Oh!* <sup>5</sup> *Tant que*. See Ex. XXVI. Note <sup>14</sup>. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. XXVI. Note <sup>14</sup>. <sup>7</sup> Ex. XXXIX. Note <sup>9</sup>. <sup>8</sup> In the imperfect indicative (*I was hoping*). <sup>9</sup> The verb *aller* requires no preposition before the infinitive which follows.

## PART II.

---

### I.—CHARACTER OF WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR.

Few<sup>1</sup> princes have been more fortunate than this great monarch, or were better entitled<sup>2</sup> to prosperity and grandeur, for the abilities and vigour of mind which he displayed in all his conduct. His spirit was bold and enterprising, yet guided by prudence. His ambition, which was exorbitant, and lay<sup>3</sup> little under the restraints of justice, and still less under those of humanity, ever submitted to the dictates<sup>4</sup> of reason and sound policy. Born in an age<sup>5</sup> when<sup>6</sup> the minds of men were intractable and unacquainted with submission,<sup>7</sup> he was yet able to direct them to his purposes;<sup>8</sup> and, partly from the ascendant of his vehement disposition, partly from art and dissimulation, to establish an unlimited monarchy. Though<sup>9</sup> not insensible to generosity, he was hardened against compassion, and seemed equally ostentatious and ambitious of *éclat* in his clemency and his severity.

The maxims of his administration were severe; but might<sup>10</sup> have been useful, had<sup>11</sup> they been solely employed in<sup>12</sup> preserving order in an established government; they were in all ill<sup>13</sup> calculated for<sup>14</sup> softening the rigours, which under the most gentle management, are inseparable from conquest.

His attempt against England was the last enterprise of this kind, which, during the course of seven hundred

years, had fully succeeded in Europe; and the greatness of his genius broke through<sup>15</sup> those limits, which first<sup>16</sup> the feudal institutions, then<sup>17</sup> the refined policy of princes, have fixed on the several states of Christendom.

Though<sup>18</sup> he rendered himself infinitely odious to<sup>19</sup> his English subjects he transmitted his power to his posterity, and the throne is still filled<sup>20</sup> by his descendants, a proof that the foundation which he laid<sup>21</sup> was firm and solid, and that amongst all his violences, while he seemed only to gratify the present passion, he had still an eye<sup>22</sup> towards futurity.—HUME.

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. XXI. Note <sup>5</sup>, Part I. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. LXXV. Note <sup>5</sup>, Part I. <sup>3</sup> *And lay little under the restraints of justice = peu soumise aux règles de la justice.* <sup>4</sup> *voix* (sing. fem.) <sup>5</sup> *Sicile* (masc.) <sup>6</sup> See Ex. V. Note <sup>2</sup>, Part I. <sup>7</sup> *Unacquainted with submission = à qui la soumission était inconnue.* <sup>8</sup> *Dessains.* <sup>9</sup> *Translate, though he was, &c. Bien que, quoique,* require the subjunctive. <sup>10</sup> See Ex. XXXIII. Note <sup>3</sup>. <sup>11</sup> *Turn, if they had, &c.* <sup>12</sup> *To employ in; to succeed in; to assist in = employer à; réussir or parvenir à; aider à.* <sup>13</sup> *Ill* (adverb) = *mal.* <sup>14</sup> See Ex. IV. Note <sup>3</sup>, and Ex. XXIV. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>15</sup> *To break through = franchir.* <sup>16</sup> *First* (adverb) = *d'abord.* <sup>17</sup> *Then = ensuite.* <sup>18</sup> See Note <sup>9</sup> above. <sup>19</sup> *Envers.* See Ex. XXVIII. Note <sup>2</sup>, Part I. <sup>20</sup> *Occupé.* <sup>21</sup> *Poser les fondations.* <sup>22</sup> *Il songeait cependant à l'avenir.*

## II.—CHARACTER OF ELIZABETH.

There are few<sup>1</sup> great personages in history who have<sup>2</sup> been more exposed to the calumny of enemies, and to the adulation of friends<sup>3</sup> than Queen Elizabeth; and yet there is scarce any<sup>4</sup> whose reputation has been more certainly determined, by the unanimous consent<sup>5</sup> of posterity. The unusual length of her administration, and the strong features of her character were able to overcome all prejudices;<sup>6</sup> and obliged her detractors to abate much of their invectives, and her admirers somewhat of their panegyric, have at last, in spite of political factions, and what is more,<sup>7</sup> of religious animosities,

Print last leaf--

54 CLASS-BOOK OF FRENCH COMPOSITION.

produced a uniform judgment with regard to<sup>7</sup> her conduct. Her ~~virtues~~<sup>wisdom</sup>, her constancy, her magnanimity, her penetration and vigilance, are ~~allowed to~~<sup>merit</sup> the highest praise, and appear not to have been surpassed by any<sup>8</sup> person who ever filled a throne. (A conduct less vigorous, less imperious, more sincere, more indulgent to<sup>9</sup> her people, would have been requisite to<sup>10</sup> form a perfect character.)

Her singular talents for government were founded equally on her temper and on her capacity. Endowed with<sup>11</sup> a great command of herself, she obtained an uncontrolled ascendant over her people.

When we contemplate her as a<sup>12</sup> woman, we are apt<sup>13</sup> to be struck with<sup>14</sup> the highest admiration of her great qualities and extensive capacity; but we are apt also to require some more softness of disposition, some more lenity of temper, some of those amiable weaknesses by which her sex is distinguished.

But the true method of estimating her merit is, to lay aside<sup>15</sup> all those considerations, and consider her merely as a rational being, placed in authority, and intrusted with<sup>16</sup> the government of mankind. We may find it<sup>17</sup> difficult to reconcile our fancy to her as a<sup>12</sup> wife; but her qualities as a<sup>12</sup> sovereign, though with some considerable exceptions, are the object of undisputed applause and approbation.—HUME.

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. XXI. Note <sup>5</sup>, Part I. <sup>2</sup> See Rule, Ex. XXXVIII. Note <sup>10</sup>, Part I. <sup>3</sup> Yet there is scarce any = *cependant il en existe à peine*. <sup>4</sup> *Voix* (fem.) <sup>5</sup> *Préjugés* (masc.) <sup>6</sup> What is more = *qui plus est*. <sup>7</sup> With regard to = *à l'égard de*. <sup>8</sup> Any = *aucun*. Turn any person having ever filled a throne. Filled = *occupé*. <sup>9</sup> *Envers*. See Ex. XXVIII. Note <sup>9</sup>, Part I. <sup>10</sup> See Ex. II. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part I. <sup>11</sup> Endowed with = *douée de*. See Ex. XII. Note <sup>9</sup>, Part I. <sup>12</sup> A is omitted before a noun used as an adjective. <sup>13</sup> To be apt to = *être porté à*. <sup>14</sup> See Ex. XXIV. Note <sup>16</sup>, Part I. <sup>15</sup> To lay aside = *s'affranchir de, mettre de côté*. <sup>16</sup> Intrusted with = *chargé de*. <sup>17</sup> Turn, we may find that it is difficult to, &c.

### *Ami* III.—LABOUR.

Labour, the offspring of Want, and the mother of Health and Contentment, lived with her two daughters in a little cottage, by the side<sup>1</sup> of a hill, at a great distance from town. They were totally unacquainted with the great, and kept no better company than the neighbouring villagers: but having a desire of seeing the world, they forsook their companions and habitation, and determined to travel.

Labour went soberly along<sup>2</sup> the road, with<sup>3</sup> Health on her right hand,<sup>4</sup> who by the sprightliness of her conversation, and songs of cheerfulness and joy, softened the toils of the way; while Contentment went smiling on the left, supporting the steps of her mother, and by her perpetual good humour increasing the vivacity of her sister.

In this manner they travelled over<sup>5</sup> forests and through towns and villages, till<sup>6</sup> at last, they arrived at the capital of the kingdom.

At their entrance into the great city, the mother conjured her daughters never<sup>7</sup> to lose sight of<sup>8</sup> her: for<sup>9</sup> it<sup>10</sup> was the will of Jupiter, she said, that their separation should be<sup>11</sup> attended<sup>12</sup> with<sup>13</sup> the utter ruin of all three. But Health was of too gay a disposition to regard the counsels of Labour: she allowed herself<sup>14</sup> to be debauched by Intemperance, and at last died in giving birth to Disease.

Contentment, in the absence of her sister, gave herself up<sup>15</sup> to the enticements<sup>16</sup> of Sloth, and was never heard of after.<sup>17</sup> While Labour, who could<sup>18</sup> have no enjoyment without her daughters, went everywhere in search<sup>19</sup> of them, till<sup>6</sup> she was at last seized by Lassi-tude, and died in misery.<sup>20</sup>—*The World.*

<sup>1</sup> *Sur le versant d'une colline.* <sup>2</sup> *Along = le long de.* <sup>3</sup> See Ex. XXIX. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>4</sup> *A sa droite.* <sup>5</sup> *A travers.* <sup>6</sup> *Till = jusqu'à* when a preposition; *jusqu'à ce que* (with the subjunctive), when a conjunction. <sup>7</sup> See Ex. XXII. Note <sup>10</sup>, Part I. <sup>8</sup> *To lose sight of some one = Perdre quelqu'un de vue.* <sup>9</sup> See Ex. XXIV.



Note<sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>10</sup> See Ex. XIII. Note<sup>14</sup>, Part I. <sup>11</sup> See *Rule*, Ex. VII. Note<sup>4</sup>, Part I. <sup>12</sup> *Suivi*. <sup>13</sup> See Ex. XII. Note<sup>9</sup>, Part I. <sup>14</sup> *To allow one's self* = *se laisser*, followed by the infinitive of the verb, which is used in the passive in English. <sup>15</sup> *To give one's self up to* = *Se livrer à*. <sup>16</sup> *Séductions*. <sup>17</sup> *Et l'on n'entendit jamais plus parler d'elle*. See Ex. LVI. Note<sup>8</sup>, Part I. <sup>18</sup> See Ex. XXXIII. Note<sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>19</sup> *In search of* = *à la recherche de*. *In search of them* = *à leur recherche*. <sup>20</sup> *Dans la misère*.

*Civil*

#### IV.—LE PÈRE DES LETTRES.

Science and the arts had, at that time,<sup>1</sup> made little progress in France. They were just<sup>2</sup> beginning to advance beyond the limits of Italy, where they had revived, and which had hitherto been their only seat. Francis I. took them immediately under his protection. He invited learned men to his court; he conversed with them familiarly; he employed them in business; he raised them to offices of dignity, and honoured them with<sup>3</sup> his confidence. That race of men, not more prone to complain, when denied<sup>4</sup> the respect to which they fancy themselves entitled,<sup>5</sup> than apt to be pleased, when<sup>6</sup> treated with the distinction which they consider as their due, thought they could not exceed in gratitude to<sup>7</sup> such a benefactor, strained their invention, and employed all their ingenuity in panegyric.

Succeeding authors, warmed with their descriptions of Francis's bounty, adopted their encomiums, and refined upon them.<sup>8</sup> The appellation of "Father of Letters," bestowed upon Francis, has rendered his memory sacred among historians, and they seem to have regarded it as a sort of impiety to uncover<sup>9</sup> his infirmities, or to point out<sup>10</sup> his defects.

Thus Francis, notwithstanding his inferior abilities and want of success, has more than equalled the fame of Charles V. The virtues which he possessed, as a<sup>11</sup> man, have entitled<sup>12</sup> him to greater admiration and praise, than<sup>13</sup> have been bestowed upon the extensive genius and fortunate arts, of a more capable, but less amiable<sup>14</sup> rival.—ROBERTSON

<sup>1</sup> *A cette époque.* <sup>2</sup> *Ils ne faisaient que de commencer à. Ne faire que de = to have just done, to be just doing. Ne faire que = to do nothing but.* <sup>3</sup> See Ex. XII. Note <sup>2</sup>, Part I. <sup>4</sup> *Translate, when they are denied, and see Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>, Part I.; to deny some one something = refuser quelque chose à quelqu'un.* <sup>5</sup> *Turn, they fancy themselves to be entitled and see Ex. LXXV. Note <sup>5</sup>, Part I.* <sup>6</sup> *Turn, when they are treated, and see Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>, Part I.* <sup>7</sup> *Envers.* See Ex. XXVIII. Note <sup>2</sup>, Part I. <sup>8</sup> *To refine upon = aller plus loin que.* <sup>9</sup> *To uncover = dévoiler, découvrir.* <sup>10</sup> *To point out = indiquer.* <sup>11</sup> See Ex. II. Note <sup>12</sup>, Part II. <sup>12</sup> *To be entitled to is avoir droit à; to entitle is donner droit à.* <sup>13</sup> *Than have been bestowed upon = qu'on n'en a accordé à. En means some, any. Ne is accounted for by the following rule. Rule.—Ne only, must be placed before a verb that comes after que (than), preceded by the comparative adverbs plus, moins, mieux. Ex: He sang last night better than he ever did = Il a chanté hier soir mieux qu'il n'a jamais fait.* <sup>14</sup> See Ex. XI. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I.

## *Quint* V.—LIBERTY AND SLAVERY.

Disguise thyself as thou wilt,<sup>1</sup> still, Slavery, thou art a bitter draught; and though<sup>2</sup> thousands in all ages<sup>3</sup> have been made to drink of thee,<sup>4</sup> thou art no less bitter on that account.<sup>5</sup> It is thou, Liberty, thrice sweet and gracious goddess, whom all in public or in private worship, whose taste is grateful, and ever will be so, till<sup>6</sup> nature herself shall change: no tints of words<sup>7</sup> can spot thy snowy mantle, or<sup>8</sup> chymic power turn thy sceptre into iron. With thee to smile upon him as he eats his crust, the swain is happier than his monarch, from whose court thou art exiled. Gracious Heaven! grant me but health, thou great Bestower of it,<sup>9</sup> and give me but this fair goddess as my companion; and shower down<sup>10</sup> thy mitres, if it seem good unto thy divine providence, upon those heads which are aching for them.<sup>11</sup>—STERNE.

<sup>1</sup> *As thou wilt = comme tu le veux.* <sup>2</sup> *Though thousands.* See Ex. LXXII. Note <sup>1</sup>, Part I. *Thousand (noun) = millier.* <sup>3</sup> *In all ages = de tout temps.* <sup>4</sup> *Have been made to drink of thee = ont été forcés de boire à ta coupe.* <sup>5</sup> *Thou art no less bitter on that account = tu n'en es pas moins amère.* <sup>6</sup> *Till.* See Ex. III. Note <sup>6</sup>

Part II. <sup>7</sup> *Tint of words = calomnie.* <sup>8</sup> *Turn, and no chymic power ; no = aucun, and ne must precede the verb.* <sup>9</sup> *Great Bestower of it.* *Of it* is the pronoun *en*, which must be placed before the verb. In this sentence there is no verb ; one must be introduced : *toi qui en es le grand dispensateur.* <sup>10</sup> *To shower down = faire pleuvoir.* <sup>11</sup> *Which are aching for them = qui brûlent du désir de les avoir.*

## *Orin* VI.—THE UTILITY OF HISTORY.

The utility of history consists principally in the examples it gives us, of the virtues and vices of those who have gone<sup>1</sup> before us ; upon which we ought to make the proper observations. History animates and excites us to the love and the practice of virtue, by<sup>2</sup> showing us the regard and veneration that was always paid<sup>3</sup> to great and virtuous men, in the times<sup>4</sup> in which they lived, and the praise and glory with which their names are perpetuated, and transmitted down<sup>5</sup> to our times.

The Roman History furnishes more examples of virtue and magnanimity, or greatness of mind, than any<sup>6</sup> other. It<sup>7</sup> was a common thing to see their consuls and dictators (who, you know, were their chief magistrates) taken from the plough, to lead their armies against their enemies, and after victory, returning to their plough again and passing the rest of their lives in modest retirement : a retirement more glorious, if<sup>8</sup> possible, than the victories which preceded it.

Many of their greatest men died so poor that they were buried at the expense<sup>9</sup> of the public.

Curius, who had no money of his own,<sup>10</sup> refused a great sum that the Samnites offered him, saying,<sup>11</sup> that he saw<sup>12</sup> no glory in<sup>13</sup> having money himself, but in<sup>13</sup> commanding those that had.<sup>14</sup> Fabricius, who had often commanded the Roman armies, and as often triumphed over their enemies, was found by<sup>15</sup> his fireside, eating those roots and herbs which he had planted<sup>16</sup> and cultivated<sup>16</sup> himself in his own field.—CHESTERFIELD.

<sup>1</sup> *Aller*, to go, implies an idea of return. When to go means to depart, to set out, &c., translate it by *partir*. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. VII. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>3</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>, Part I. <sup>4</sup> *In the times in which* = *à l'époque où*. <sup>5</sup> *Down to our times* = *jusqu'à nos jours*. *Up to, down to, as far as, and to* (when meaning *as far as*), are translated by *jusqu'à*. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. II. Note <sup>8</sup>, Part II. <sup>7</sup> See Ex. XIII. Note <sup>14</sup>, Part I. <sup>8</sup> Turn, if that were possible. <sup>9</sup> *At the expense* = *aux frais*. <sup>10</sup> *Who had no money of his own* = *qui n'avait aucune fortune*. <sup>11</sup> *Saying* = *en disant*. *En* is used here, because *he said* . . . at the time *he refused*. When *whilst* or *in* are understood in English before a present participle, the French present participle must be preceded by *en*. Ex: *qui is used after a preposition, speaking of persons* = *on emploie QUI après une préposition, EN parlant de personnes*; *he said so, smiling* = *il dit cela EN souriant*. <sup>12</sup> *He saw*, in the imperfect of the indicative, because *he saw at the time when he refused*. See Ex. XVIII. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part I. <sup>13</sup> *à* with the infinitive. <sup>14</sup> *Those that had some*. *Some* and *any*, used without a noun, are translated by the pronoun *en*, placed before the verb. <sup>15</sup> *By his fireside* = *au coin de son feu*. <sup>16</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I.

*Omit*

## VII.—CIVILISATION.

That our civilisation has been a failure, is the pronounced opinion of some cynical philosopher of transatlantic origin. Civilisation and savagedom march alongside of each other,<sup>1</sup> and savagedom has hitherto had the best of it.<sup>2</sup> Christianity has carried its message of peace to the remotest corners of the Old World, and yet at this moment Europe is one great camp. The sound of the armourer's hammer is heard in the land, beating ploughshares into swords. In every shipyard by the sea great war ships are being fitted out for the fray. The very blood-stained earth has for<sup>3</sup> months past shaken under the tread of men in arms; and how soon<sup>4</sup> the slaughter is to be resumed<sup>5</sup> no man can foretell. For ages<sup>6</sup> wise men have begged for<sup>7</sup> peace. There were peace societies even in Rome; there were peace societies in the time of the Conqueror. There are still peace societies; but all in vain. The "United States of Europe" are still far off. Science has made brilliant

advances in the arts of peace, but the arts of peace are being pressed into the service of the arts of war. The trade of slaughter is more popular than ever, and the destroyer in<sup>8</sup> a scarlet coat more than ever the calling of an "officer and a gentleman." It is a miserable story and a painful subject of thought for men who can allow their conventional ways of thinking to remain long enough in abeyance, to enable them to see what all this means. It is martial glory—military supremacy—great victories—the lordship of the sea, in the language of fools. It is savagedom—butchery—widows and orphans—wounds, torture and death to thousands<sup>9</sup>—homeless and hungry wanderers, and wretchedness unspeakable to every rightly-reasoning, humane-hearted man.<sup>10</sup>—*Echo*, Nov. 30, 1876.

<sup>1</sup> *Alongside of each other* = à côté l'une de l'autre ; côte à côte.

<sup>2</sup> *To have the best of it* = avoir l'avantage. <sup>3</sup> *For* (meaning *during*) is *pendant*, and *for* (meaning *since*) is *depuis*. *For* is never *pour*, when it refers to time. <sup>4</sup> *How soon* = *quand*. *How often* = *combien de fois*. <sup>5</sup> *Is to be resumed* = *recommencera*. <sup>6</sup> *For ages* = *depuis des siècles*. See Note <sup>3</sup> above. <sup>7</sup> *To beg for* = *demandar instamment*. <sup>8</sup> *Turn dressed in*. See Ex. XII. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part I. <sup>9</sup> See Ex. V. Note <sup>2</sup>, Part II. <sup>10</sup> *Every rightly-reasoning humane-hearted man* = *tout homme qui a un cœur pour sentir et du bon sens pour raisonner*.

#### VIII.—RECEPTION OF JAMES THE SECOND'S QUEEN IN FRANCE.

As soon as the news<sup>1</sup> that<sup>2</sup> the Queen of England was on the French coast/~~had~~ been brought to Versailles, a palace was prepared<sup>3</sup> for her reception.<sup>4</sup> Carriages and troops of guards were despatched<sup>5</sup> to await her orders. Workmen were employed to mend<sup>6</sup> the Calais road that<sup>6</sup> her journey might be easy. Mary was on the road towards the French court when news<sup>1</sup> came<sup>7</sup> that her husband had, after a rough voyage, landed safe<sup>8</sup> at the little village of Ambleuse. Persons of high rank were instantly despatched from Versailles to greet and

escort him. *Après le temps* Meanwhile Lewis, attended<sup>9</sup> by his family and his nobility, went forth in state<sup>10</sup> to receive the *au* exiled Queen. Before his gorgeous coach went the Swiss *devant* halberdiers. On each side<sup>11</sup> of it<sup>12</sup> and behind it<sup>13</sup> rode<sup>14</sup> the body guards with cymbals clashing and trumpets pealing. *laide et de* After the King, in a hundred carriages, each drawn by six horses, *devenir* ~~came~~ the most splendid aristocracy of Europe, all feathers, ribands, jewels, and embroidery. *C'est à dire* Before<sup>15</sup> the procession had gone far it was announced<sup>3</sup> that Mary was approaching. Lewis alighted and advanced on foot<sup>16</sup> to meet<sup>17</sup> her. She broke forth into passionate expressions<sup>18</sup> of gratitude. "Madam," said her host, "it is but a melancholy service that I am rendering you to-day. I hope that I may<sup>19</sup> be able hereafter to render you ~~services~~ greater and more pleasing." He embraced the little Prince of Wales, and made the Queen seat<sup>20</sup> herself in the royal state coach on the right hand.<sup>21</sup> The cavalcade then turned<sup>22</sup> towards Saint-Germain.—MACAULAY.

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. XXV. Note <sup>13</sup>, Part I. <sup>2</sup> Turn, of the landing of the Queen of England on the French coast. <sup>3</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>.  
<sup>4</sup> Turn, to receive her. See Ex. II. Note <sup>5</sup>, Part I. <sup>5</sup> To mend (roads) = *réparer*. <sup>6</sup> That stands for in order that. *Afin que* requires the subjunctive. <sup>7</sup> Arriver. <sup>8</sup> Safe = *sain et sauf*.  
<sup>9</sup> Accompany. <sup>10</sup> *En grande cérémonie*. <sup>11</sup> On each side = *de chaque côté*. <sup>12</sup> A personal pronoun referring to a noun of thing cannot be placed after a preposition. Turn, of the carriage.  
<sup>13</sup> And behind it = *ainsi que derrière*. <sup>14</sup> Rode the body-guards = *les gardes du corps étaient à cheval*. <sup>15</sup> See Ex. XIX. Note <sup>9</sup>, Part I. <sup>16</sup> On foot = *à pied*. <sup>17</sup> To meet is *rencontrer*, when it means to meet by chance; when it means to meet purposely, it is in French *aller à la rencontre de*, *aller au-devant de*. <sup>18</sup> To break forth (neuter) = *éclater*. <sup>19</sup> See Ex. XXVII. Note <sup>11</sup>, Part I. <sup>20</sup> To seat one's self = *s'asseoir*. That infinitive must follow the verb *faire* immediately (causative voice). Remark.—Reflexive verbs cease to be reflexive after the verb *faire*. Ex: He made my father seat himself = *il fit asseoir mon père*. <sup>21</sup> On the right hand = *à sa droite*. <sup>22</sup> *Se diriger*

## IX.—SIR CHRISTOPHER HATTON.

Hatton, though<sup>1</sup> he were a<sup>2</sup> courtier, yet was known by Queen Elizabeth to be an honest man, and was thought by her<sup>3</sup> to be not unfit for the place<sup>†</sup> where conscience hath, or should<sup>4</sup> have, more place than law. Although<sup>1</sup> some were of opinion<sup>5</sup> that it was not so much the Queen's own choice as<sup>6</sup> that she was persuaded to it by some who wished<sup>7</sup> Hatton not well; both thereby to be a cause of absenting<sup>8</sup> him from the court, and thinking that such<sup>9</sup> a sedentary place, to<sup>10</sup> a corpulent man that had been used to exercise, would be a means to shorten his life, and he lived not three years after.—BAKER'S *Chronicle*.

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>9</sup>, Part II. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. II. Note <sup>12</sup>, Part II.

<sup>3</sup> Turn, yet Queen Elizabeth knew he was an honest man, and thought that he was not unfit for the place. <sup>4</sup> Here, should means ought to.

<sup>5</sup> To be of opinion = être d'avis. <sup>6</sup> Turn, that it was not the Queen's own choice, but that she had been persuaded to choose thus. <sup>7</sup> To wish some one not well = en vouloir à quelqu'un; ne pas souhaiter de bien à quelqu'un. <sup>8</sup> Of absenting him from the court = de l'éloigner de la cour. <sup>9</sup> See Ex. XLVIII. Note <sup>7</sup>, Part I. <sup>10</sup> pour.

† That of Lord Chancellor.

## X.—THE LAST WITCHES.

The destruction of the old notions respecting witchcraft was effected between the Restoration and the Revolution—that is to say, in 1660, the majority of educated men still believed in<sup>1</sup> witchcraft; while in 1688 the majority disbelieved it.<sup>2</sup> In 1665, the old orthodox view was stated by Chief-Baron Hale, who, on a trial<sup>3</sup> of two women for witchcraft, said to the jury, "That there are such<sup>4</sup> creatures as witches, I make<sup>5</sup> no doubt at all; for,<sup>6</sup> first,<sup>7</sup> the Scriptures have affirmed so much;<sup>8</sup> secondly, the wisdom of all nations have provided laws against such persons, which<sup>9</sup> is an argument of confidence of such a crime." This reasoning was irresistible, and the

witches were hung; but the change in public opinion began to affect even the judges, and after this melancholy exhibition of the Chief-Baron's, such scenes became gradually rarer. Three persons were executed at Exeter for witchcraft in 1682, and Hutchinson says, "I suppose these are the three last that have been<sup>10</sup> hanged in England." Dr. Parr, however, states that two witches were hung at Northampton in 1705; and that in 1712 five other witches suffered the same fate at the same place. This is all the more<sup>11</sup> shameful, because a disbelief in the existence of witches had become almost universal among educated men; though<sup>12</sup> the old superstition was well defended on the judgment-seat<sup>13</sup> and in the pulpit. However, all was in vain; every year diminished the old belief; and in 1736 the laws against witchcraft were repealed,<sup>14</sup> and another vestige of superstition effaced from the English statute-book.—BUCKLE'S *History of Civilisation in England*.

<sup>1</sup> *To believe in* = *croire à*. <sup>2</sup> *To it* = *y*, before the verb. <sup>3</sup> *On a trial of two women for witchcraft* = *Dans un procès où deux femmes étaient accusées de sorcellerie*. <sup>4</sup> *Turn, creatures such as*. *Such as* = *tel que*. <sup>5</sup> *I make no doubt at all* = *je ne doute point*, sentence which should be placed before *that there are*, &c., and see Rule <sup>4</sup>, Ex. VII. Part I. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. XXIV. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>7</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>16</sup>, Part II. <sup>8</sup> *Turn, the Scriptures have affirmed it*. <sup>9</sup> *Which* is not here *qui* or *que*, because it does not relate to one particular noun expressed before; it refers to the whole sentence, *the wisdom of all nations hath provided laws against such persons*. *Which* is here *ce qui* (that which), it should be *ce que*, if in the accusative. <sup>10</sup> See Ex. XXXVIII. Note <sup>10</sup>, Part I. <sup>11</sup> *All the more...because* = *d'autant plus...que*. <sup>12</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>9</sup>, Part II. <sup>13</sup> *Judgment-seat* = *tribunal*. <sup>14</sup> *To repeal* = *abroger*.

## LI. — AN AMIABLE JUDGE.

Justice Graham was the most polite judge that ever adorned<sup>1</sup> the bench. On one occasion it was said he had hastily condemned a man, who had been capitally convicted,<sup>2</sup> to transportation, when the clerk of the court, in a whisper, set<sup>3</sup> him right. "Oh!" he ex-



claimed, "criminal, I beg your pardon ; come back : " and putting on the black cap courteously apologised<sup>4</sup> for the mistake, and consigned him to the gallows, to be hanged by the neck until<sup>5</sup> he was dead. To one found guilty of burglary, he would<sup>6</sup> say : " My honest friend, you are found guilty of felony, for which it is my painful duty," &c. Among other peculiarities he had a custom of repeating the answers made to him,<sup>7</sup> as illustrated in the following dialogue :—" My good friend, you are charged<sup>8</sup> with murder : what have you to observe on the subject ? " " Eh ! my lord ? " " Eh ! how did it happen ? " " Why, my lord, Jem aggravated me, and swore he would knock<sup>9</sup> the breath out of my body. " " Good ; he would knock the breath out of your body ; and what did you reply ? " " Nothing ; I floored him. " " Good ; and then. . . . " " Why, then, my lord, they took<sup>10</sup> him up and found that his head was cut open. " " His head was cut open ; good ; and what followed ? " " After that, my lord, they gathered him up to take<sup>12</sup> him to the hospital, but he died on the road. " " He died on the road ; *very good.*"—*London Review.*

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. XXXVIII. Note <sup>10</sup>, Part I. <sup>2</sup> *Capitally convicted* = *déclaré coupable d'assassinat.* <sup>3</sup> *Set him right* = *lui expliqua l'erreur qu'il avait commise.* <sup>4</sup> *To apologise for* = *s'excuser de.* <sup>5</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part II. <sup>6</sup> *He would say.* *Would* is not translated by a *conditional*, when used as a sign of an *imperfect*, i.e. an habitual action. *He would say* = *disait.* <sup>7</sup> *Made to him* = *qu'on lui faisait.* See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>, Part I. <sup>8</sup> *To be charged with* = *être accusé de.* <sup>9</sup> *He would knock my breath out of my body* = *il me tuerait.* <sup>10</sup> *To take up* = *relever, ramasser.* <sup>11</sup> *And what followed ?* = *et qu'arriva-t-il ensuite ?* <sup>12</sup> *To take some one somewhere* = *mener, conduire quelqu'un quelque part.*

## XII.—LOOK ON THIS PICTURE, AND THEN ON THAT.

" Father is coming ! " and little round faces grow long,<sup>1</sup> and merry voices are hushed, and toys are hustled<sup>2</sup>

into the closet; and mamma glances<sup>3</sup> nervously at the door; and baby (is bribed<sup>4</sup> with a lump of sugar to keep the peace), and father's business-face relaxes not a muscle; and the little group huddle like timid sheep in a corner, and tea is despatched as silently as if<sup>5</sup> speaking was prohibited by the statute-book; and the children creep like culprits to bed, marvelling<sup>6</sup> that baby dare crow so loud, now that "Father has come."

"Father is coming!" and bright eyes sparkle<sup>7</sup> for joy; and tiny feet dance with glee; and eager faces press against the window-pane; and rosy lips claim kisses at the door; and picture-books lie unheeded<sup>8</sup> on the table; and tops, and balls, and dolls and kites<sup>9</sup> are discussed; and little Susy lays her soft cheeks against the paternal whiskers with the most fearless abandon; and Charley gets a love-pat<sup>10</sup> for his medal; and mamma's face grows radiant; and the evening paper<sup>11</sup> is read,<sup>12</sup>—not silently, but aloud,—and tea, and toast, and time vanish with equal celerity, for jubilee has<sup>13</sup> arrived and "Father has<sup>13</sup> come!"—FANNY FERN.

<sup>1</sup> To grow long = *s'allonger*. <sup>2</sup> To hustle = *jeter pêle-mêle*. See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>, Part I. <sup>3</sup> To glance at = *jeter un regard furtif*.

<sup>4</sup> To bribe = *suborner, gagner*. <sup>5</sup> As if speaking was prohibited = *que s'il était défendu de parler*. <sup>6</sup> To marvel = *s'étonner*.

See Ex. VII. Note <sup>4</sup>, Part I. <sup>7</sup> To sparkle for joy = *étinceler de joie*. Remark.—Verbs in *eler* and *eter* double the *l* or the *t*, before an *e* mute. <sup>8</sup> To lie unheeded = *rester abandonné*. <sup>9</sup> Kite = *cerf-volant* (pl. *cerfs-volants*). <sup>10</sup> Love-pat = *une petite tape*. <sup>11</sup> Evening-paper = *journal du soir*. <sup>12</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>, Part I. <sup>13</sup> The verbs *aller, arriver, mourir, rester, partir, sortir, venir, tomber, &c.*

are conjugated with the auxiliary *être* in their compound tenses.

### XIII.—ESCHINES AND DEMOSTHENES.

Once on a time, a statesman, in the shock and contest of parties, prevailed<sup>2</sup> so far as<sup>3</sup> to profit, by his eloquence, the banishment of an able adversary; whom he secretly followed, offering him money for his support

*et il lui offrit de l'argent pour le soutenir.*

*\* pour venir à ses fins.*

during his exile, and ~~seeing him with topics of consolation~~ <sup>try, at the same time to</sup> in his misfortune. "Alas!" cried the banished statesman, "with what regret must<sup>4</sup> I leave my friends in this city, where even enemies are so generous!" Virtue, (though in<sup>5</sup> an enemy ~~has~~ <sup>has</sup> pleased him) and we ~~also~~ <sup>also</sup> give it the just tribute of praise and approbation; nor,<sup>6</sup> do we retract these sentiments, when we hear<sup>7</sup> that the action passed<sup>8</sup> at Athens about two thousand years ago,<sup>9</sup> and that the (persons' names were) Eschines and Demosthenes.—D. HUME.

<sup>1</sup> Once on a time = *une fois*. <sup>2</sup> L'emporter, obtenir l'avantage. <sup>3</sup> A ce point que (with the indicative), or *jusqu'à* (prep. with the infinitive). <sup>4</sup> *Dois-je*. <sup>5</sup> *In*, before a noun of persons, and not referring to the body, but to the soul, the mind, is translated by *chez*, sometimes by *en*; never by *dans*, which means *within, inside of*. <sup>6</sup> Nor do we retract these sentiments = *et nous ne rétractons pas non plus ces sentiments*. <sup>7</sup> *Apprendre*. See Ex. LVI. Note <sup>8</sup>, Part I. <sup>9</sup> Passed = *se passait*. <sup>10</sup> About two thousand years ago = *Il y a environ deux mille ans*. See Ex. V. Note <sup>7</sup>, Part I.

#### XIV.—THE AGE OF CHIVALRY.

Between the age of Charlemagne and that of the Crusades, a revolution took place<sup>1</sup> among<sup>2</sup> the Spaniards, Normans, and French, which gradually extended itself to the rest of Europe. The service of the infantry was degraded<sup>3</sup> to the plebeians; the cavalry formed the strength of the armies; and the honourable name of "miles," or soldier, was confined solely to the<sup>4</sup> gentlemen who served on horseback, and who were invested with<sup>5</sup> the character of knighthood.

The dukes and counts, who had usurped the rights of sovereignty, divided the provinces among their faithful barons; the barons distributed among their vassals the fiefs, or benefices, of their jurisdiction; and these military tenants, the peers of each other,<sup>6</sup> and of their lord, composed the noble or equestrian order, that disdained to conceive the peasants, or burghers, as of the same species as themselves. The dignity of their birth was

preserved by pure and equal alliances ; their sons, alone, who could<sup>7</sup> produce four quarters, or lines of ancestry, without spot or<sup>8</sup> reproach, might<sup>7</sup> legally pretend to the honour of knighthood ; but a valiant plebeian was sometimes enriched and ennobled<sup>9</sup> by the sword, and became the father of a new race. A single knight could<sup>7</sup> impart, according to his judgment, the character which he received, and the warlike sovereigns of Europe derived more glory from this personal distinction, than from the lustre of their diadem.—GIBBON.

<sup>1</sup> To take place = avoir lieu. <sup>2</sup> Among (nations) = chez. <sup>3</sup> Degraded to = donner à...en signe d'avilissement. <sup>4</sup> Confined solely to the = ne fut donné qu'aux. <sup>5</sup> Invested with = revêtu de. See Ex. XII. Note <sup>2</sup>, Part I. <sup>6</sup> See Remark, Ex. LXXV. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>7</sup> See Ex. XXXIII. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>8</sup> ni. <sup>9</sup> To ennoble = ennoblir, when it means to make more illustrious: *Les beaux arts ennoblissent une langue* (Académie); and ANOBLIR, when it means to give titles of nobility: *Le roi seul peut anoblir* (Académie).

## XV.—A BILL OF COSTS.

A worthy old gentleman in the country, having employed an attorney, of whom he had a pretty<sup>1</sup> good opinion, to do some law business for him in London, was greatly surprised, on his coming<sup>2</sup> to town, and demanding<sup>3</sup> his bill of law charges, to find out<sup>4</sup> it amounted to at least three times the sum he expected ; the honest attorney assuring him that there was no article in his bill that was<sup>5</sup> not<sup>6</sup> fair and reasonable. "Nay," said the country gentleman, "there is one of them<sup>7</sup> which, I am sure, cannot be so,<sup>8</sup> for<sup>9</sup> you have put down three shillings and fourpence for going to Southwark, when none of my business lay<sup>10</sup> that way ;<sup>11</sup> pray, what is the meaning of that,<sup>12</sup> Sir?" "Oh ! Sir," said he, "that's for fetching the turkey that you sent me for a present from the country."—JOE MILLER.

<sup>1</sup> Pretty (adverb) = assez. <sup>2</sup> Quand il vint. <sup>3</sup> Et qu'il demanda. See Ex. XVII. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>4</sup> Trouver, découvrir. <sup>5</sup> See



<sup>13</sup> *And what the conversation wanted in wit = et ce qui manqua à la conversation au point de vue de l'esprit.* <sup>14</sup> *Was made up in laughter = fut supplée par la gaîté.*

## XVII.—THE VICAR OF WAKEFIELD'S HOUSE.

Our little habitation was situated at the foot of a sloping hill, sheltered with<sup>1</sup> a beautiful underwood<sup>2</sup> behind,<sup>3</sup> and a prattling river before;<sup>4</sup> on one side<sup>5</sup> a meadow, on the other a green. My farm consisted of<sup>6</sup> about twenty acres of excellent land, having given a hundred pounds for my predecessor's good-will. ~~Nothing~~ could exceed the neatness of my little enclosure, the elms and hedge-rows ~~appearing~~ with inexpressible beauty. My house consisted of<sup>6</sup> but one story, and was covered with<sup>7</sup> thatch, which<sup>8</sup> gave it an air of ~~great snugness~~: the walls on the inside<sup>9</sup> were nicely whitewashed, and my daughters undertook to adorn them with<sup>10</sup> pictures of their ~~own~~ designing. Though<sup>11</sup> the same room served us for parlour and kitchen, that only made it ~~the~~ warmer; besides, as it was kept<sup>12</sup> with the utmost neatness, the dishes, plates, and coppers,<sup>13</sup> being well scoured, and all disposed in bright rows on the shelves, the eye was agreeably relieved,<sup>14</sup> and ~~did not want~~ richer furniture. There were three other apartments:<sup>15</sup> one for my wife and me; another for our two daughters; and the third, ~~à~~ with two beds, for the rest of the children.—OLIVER GOLDSMITH.

<sup>1</sup> *Par.* <sup>2</sup> *Underwood = taillis.* <sup>3</sup> *Behind (adv. of place) = par-derrière.* <sup>4</sup> *Before (adv. of place) = par-devant; before (adv. of time) = auparavant.* <sup>5</sup> *See Ex. VIII. Note <sup>11</sup>, Part II.* <sup>6</sup> *See Ex. XVI. Note <sup>1</sup>, Part II.* <sup>7</sup> *See Ex. XII. Note <sup>9</sup>, Part I.* <sup>8</sup> *See Ex. X. Note <sup>9</sup>, Part II.* <sup>9</sup> *A l'intérieur.* <sup>10</sup> *See Ex. XII. Note <sup>9</sup>, Part I.* <sup>11</sup> *Turn, it is true that... but that only made it warmer.* <sup>12</sup> *Entretenu.* <sup>13</sup> *Coppers = casseroles.* <sup>14</sup> *The eye was agreeably relieved = la vue était agréablement reposée.* <sup>15</sup> *Apartment = chambre.*

## XVIII.—MARY QUEEN OF SCOTS.

To all the charms of beauty, Mary added those accomplishments<sup>1</sup> which render ~~the~~ impression irresistible. Polite, affable, insinuating, sprightly, and capable of speaking and of writing with equal ease and dignity. Sudden, however, and violent in ~~all~~ her attachments; because her heart was warm and unsuspicious. Impatient of<sup>2</sup> contradiction, because (she had been accustomed from her infancy to be treated as a queen. No stranger, on some occasions, ~~to~~ dissimulation; when, in that perfidious court, where she received her education, was reckoned among the necessary arts of government. Not insensible to flattery, or ~~unconscious~~ of that pleasure, with which almost every woman beholds the influence of her own beauty. Formed with the qualities that we love, not with the talents that we admire, she was an agreeable woman, rather than an illustrious queen.

The vivacity of her spirit, not sufficiently tempered with<sup>3</sup> sound judgment, and the warmth of her heart, which was not at all times<sup>4</sup> under the restraint of discretion,<sup>5</sup> betrayed her both<sup>6</sup> into errors and into crimes. To say that she was always unfortunate, will not account for<sup>7</sup> that long and almost uninterrupted succession of calamities which befell her; we must likewise add that she was often imprudent.

Mary's sufferings exceed, both<sup>6</sup> in degree and in duration, those tragical distresses, which fancy has feigned, to excite sorrow and commiseration; and while we survey<sup>8</sup> them, we are apt<sup>9</sup> altogether to forget her frailties; we think of her faults with less indignation, and approve of our tears, as if they were shed for a person, who had attained much nearer to pure virtue.—ROBERTSON.

<sup>1</sup> Accomplishments = talents. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. XXIV. Note <sup>21</sup>, Part I.  
<sup>3</sup> Tempered with = modéré par. <sup>4</sup> At all times = toujours.  
<sup>5</sup> Under the restraint of discretion = gouverné par la prudence.  
<sup>6</sup> Both = et. <sup>7</sup> To account for = expliquer. <sup>8</sup> To survey = considérer attentivement. <sup>9</sup> See Ex. II. Note <sup>12</sup>, Part II.

## XIX.—ELDON AT OXFORD.

When John Scott, afterwards Lord Eldon, joined his brother William at Oxford, he was soon entered as a fellow-commoner; and showed himself so well prepared with a variety of classical and general information<sup>1</sup> that he had not been a year<sup>2</sup> at college before<sup>3</sup> he stood for<sup>4</sup> and won a fellowship open to natives<sup>5</sup> of Northumberland. While<sup>6</sup> an undergraduate, John had a narrow escape<sup>7</sup> of his life. He was skating on Christ Church meadow, and venturing on a portion of it but weakly frozen,<sup>8</sup> fell into a ditch deep enough to<sup>9</sup> allow him to sink to<sup>10</sup> the neck. When he had scrambled out,<sup>11</sup> and<sup>12</sup> was dripping from the collar and oozing from the stockings, a brandy vendor shuffled towards him, and recommended a glass of something<sup>13</sup> warm; upon which<sup>14</sup> Edward Norton, of University College, sweeping past, cried out to the retailer, "None of your brandy for that wet young man; he never drinks but<sup>15</sup> when<sup>16</sup> he is dry." —Twiss' *Life of Lord Eldon*.

<sup>1</sup> *Connaissances*. <sup>2</sup> *He had not been a year* = *il n'y avait pas un an qu'il était*. <sup>3</sup> *Que*. <sup>4</sup> *He stood for and won a fellowship* = *il se présenta comme candidat pour une place de membre d'un collège . . . et l'emporta, la gagna*. <sup>5</sup> *Natives of N.* = *personnes nées dans le N.* <sup>6</sup> Translate, *When he was an undergraduate*. <sup>7</sup> *J. had a narrow escape of his life* = *la vie de J. fut en danger extrême*. <sup>8</sup> *Of it but weakly frozen* = *qui n'était que faiblement gelée*. <sup>9</sup> *Enough . . . to* = *assez . . . pour*. <sup>10</sup> *to*, meaning here as far as = *jusqu'à*. <sup>11</sup> *To scramble out* = *sortir avec beaucoup de difficulté*. <sup>12</sup> See Ex. XVII. Note <sup>5</sup>, Part I. <sup>13</sup> See Ex. LIX. Note <sup>2</sup>, Part I. <sup>14</sup> *Which* = *quoi*, after a preposition. <sup>15</sup> *but* = *ne . . . que*. <sup>16</sup> *When* is indifferently *quand* or *lorsque*, except in interrogative sentences, where *when* is always *quand*. Ex.: *When shall you come?* = *quand viendrez-vous?* Note.—After *que*, *qui*, *car*, *quoique*, &c., *lorsque* is preferred to *quand*, for the sake of euphony. *Qui quand*, *car quand*, sound most disagreeably to the ear.



## XX.—DEATH OF MARAT.

Hark, a rap again!<sup>1</sup> A musical woman's voice, refusing to be rejected<sup>2</sup>: it is the citoyenne who would<sup>3</sup> do France a service. Marat, recognising from within,<sup>4</sup> cries, "Admit her." Charlotte Corday is admitted.

"Citoyen Marat, I am from Caen, the seat of rebellion, and wish to speak with you." "Be seated, *mon enfant*. Now what are the traitors doing at Caen? What deputies are at Caen?" Charlotte names some deputies. "Their heads shall fall within<sup>5</sup> a fortnight," croaks the eager people's friend, clutching his tablets to write: Barbaroux, Pétion, ~~writes he with bare, shrunk~~ ~~and~~ turning aside<sup>6</sup> in the bath: Pétion, ~~and~~ Louvet, and—Charlotte has drawn her knife from the sheath; plunges it, with<sup>7</sup> one sure stroke, into the writer's heart. "A moi, chère amie, ~~Help, dear!~~" no more<sup>8</sup> could the death-choked say or shriek. The ~~helpful~~ washerwoman ~~running in~~, there is no Friend of the People, or Friend of the Washerwoman left, ~~but~~ his life with a groan gushes out, indignant, to the shades below.—THOMAS CARLYLE, *French Revolution*.

<sup>1</sup> A rap again! = *on frappe encore*. <sup>2</sup> Refusing to be rejected = *refusant qu'on*, with the subjunctive. <sup>3</sup> Would = *désire, voudrait*. <sup>4</sup> From within = *de l'intérieur*. <sup>5</sup> Within a fortnight = *avant quinze jours*. <sup>6</sup> To turn (active) = *tourner*; to turn (neuter) = *se tourner*; aside = *de côté*. <sup>7</sup> D'une main sure. See Ex. XII. Note <sup>9</sup>, Part I. <sup>8</sup> No more could the death-choked say or shriek = *celui que la mort étouffait ne put parler ni crier davantage*.

*accusé de trahison*

## XXI.—VICTOR HUGO'S DRAMAS.

Events in Hugo's dramas are rapid, impressive, full of action and fire; they all<sup>1</sup> bear the traces of their birth. No modern literature, none<sup>2</sup> at least<sup>3</sup> since the death of Scott, can show stories full of such<sup>4</sup> various and, as may be said, Titanic force,<sup>5</sup> now<sup>6</sup> angry in resistance to society and destiny, now delicately graceful as

a flower or a child. If<sup>7</sup> Victor Hugo had touched only one of the many strings, if he had only been lyrist, dramatist, or novelist, he would still have ranked with<sup>8</sup> the chief French writers. But adding, as he does,<sup>9</sup> variety and abundance to quality, it<sup>10</sup> is not easy to see how any<sup>11</sup> other French poet can be placed<sup>12</sup> beside him.—*Daily News*, Feb. 27, 1877.

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. XIX. Note <sup>4</sup>, Part I. <sup>2</sup> *Aucun*. <sup>3</sup> *At least* = *au moins*. Translate this expression, however, by *au moins*, when it refers to number. Ex.: Give me AT LEAST ten shillings = *donnez-moi AU MOINS dix schellings*. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. XLVIII. Note <sup>7</sup>, Part I. <sup>5</sup> See Ex. XI. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>6</sup> *Now . . . now*; sometimes . . . sometimes = *tantôt . . . tantôt*. <sup>7</sup> In the past, always write the imperfect of the indicative after *if*, even if it had the form of a conditional in English. Ex.: *If it should be fine* = *s'il faisait beau*. <sup>8</sup> *Il aurait encore été placé or compté parmi*. <sup>9</sup> *Comme il le fait*. <sup>10</sup> See Ex. XVI. Note <sup>7</sup>, Part I. <sup>11</sup> *Aucun*. <sup>12</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>, Part I.

## XXII.—THE TRIAL<sup>1</sup> OF CHARLOTTE CORDAY.

*qui s'est rendue au*  
On Wednesday morning the thronged Palais de Justice and Revolutionary Tribunal can see her face—beautiful and calm; *she dates it* fourth day of the Preparation of Peace.' (A strange murmur ran through the Hall) at sight of her; *you could not say of what character*. Tinville has his indictments: the cutler of the Palais Royal will testify that he sold her the sheath-knife; "All these details are needless," interrupted Charlotte; "it is I that killed<sup>3</sup> Marat." "By whose instigation<sup>4</sup>?" "By no one's.<sup>5</sup>" "What tempted you, then?" "His crimes." "I killed one man," added she, raising<sup>6</sup> her voice extremely, as<sup>7</sup> they went on<sup>8</sup> with their questions—"I killed one man to<sup>9</sup> save a hundred thousand;<sup>10</sup> a villain to save innocents; a savage wild-beast to give<sup>11</sup> repose to my country. I was a<sup>11</sup> Republican before the Revolution; I never wanted<sup>12</sup> energy." There is nothing to be said.<sup>13</sup> The public gazes astonished: the hasty limners sketch her features, Charlotte not

disapproving<sup>1</sup> the men of law proceed with their formalities. The doom is death as a<sup>2</sup> murderess.—THOMAS CARLYLE, *French Revolution*.

<sup>1</sup> Trial = procès. <sup>2</sup> At sight of her = quand on l'aperçut. <sup>3</sup> C'est moi qui ai tué. <sup>4</sup> By whose instigation = à l'instigation de qui. Note.—You never begin a question by dont. Ex.: Whose book is this = à qui est ce livre. Besides, dont is a relative pronoun, and in the sentence <sup>4</sup>, whose cannot be translated by dont, as it relates to no noun expressed before. <sup>5</sup> By no one's, = à l'instigation de personne. See the question <sup>4</sup> above. <sup>6</sup> Raising her voice = en élevant la voix. See Ex. VI. Note <sup>11</sup>, Part II. <sup>7</sup> As = à mesure que, when an action goes on at the same time as another. Ex.: The enemy withdrew, as we advanced = l'ennemi se retirait à mesure que nous avançons. <sup>8</sup> To go on with = continuer. <sup>9</sup> See Ex. II. Note <sup>5</sup>, Part I. <sup>10</sup> Translate, a hundred-thousand of them. See Ex. LXXIV. Note <sup>7</sup>, Part I. <sup>11</sup> See Ex. II. Note <sup>12</sup>, Part II. <sup>12</sup> To want = manquer de. Turn, I have never wanted ~~energy~~, *courage*, and remember that in a negative sentence the partitive article is always de, or d' before a noun beginning with an e mute or a silent h. <sup>13</sup> There is nothing to be said = il n'y a rien à dire. Cf. House to be sold = maison à vendre. <sup>14</sup> C. not disapproving = C. ne s'y opposant pas.

15. Elle fut condamnée à mort pour

### XXIII.—A GOOD COMPARISON.

*à la Cour d'assises*  
During the (assizes) in a case of assault and battery, where a stone had been thrown by the defendant,<sup>1</sup> (the following<sup>2</sup> clear and conclusive<sup>3</sup> evidence<sup>4</sup> was drawn out of a witness.)

"Did you see<sup>4</sup> the defendant throw the stone?"

"I saw a stone, and I was pretty sure<sup>5</sup> the defendant threw it."

"Was<sup>6</sup> it a large stone?" "I should say<sup>6</sup> it was a large stone."

"Can't you say how<sup>7</sup> big it was?" "I should say it was a stone of some<sup>8</sup> bigness."

"Can't you give the jury some idea of the stone?"

"Why, as near as I recollect,<sup>9</sup> it was something of a stone."

"Can't you compare it to some other object?"

"Why, if I were to compare it,<sup>10</sup> so as to<sup>11</sup> give some

*à la Cour d'assises*

*une idée fautive.*

notion of the stone, I should say it was as large as a lump of chalk."—LORD BROUGHAM.

<sup>1</sup> *Defendant* = *accusé*. In civil law-suits *defendant* is *défendeur*, *défenderesse*; *plaintiff* or *applicant* is *demandeur*, *demanderesse*.

<sup>2</sup> To be placed after the noun. <sup>3</sup> *Aussi claire que concluante*.

*Evidence* (in trials) = *déposition*. <sup>4</sup> Turn, have you seen? <sup>5</sup> In the imperfect of the indicative. *Was it*, at the time when you saw it.

<sup>6</sup> *Mon opinion est que*. <sup>7</sup> *How big it was* = *de quelle grosseur elle était*. <sup>8</sup> *Certain*. <sup>9</sup> *As near as I recollect* = *autant que je puis me rappeler*. To the best of my belief = *autant que je puis croire*.

<sup>10</sup> *If I were to compare it* = *si j'avais à faire une comparaison*.

<sup>11</sup> *So as to* = *de manière à*, followed by the infinitive.

*It was some time before I was = c'était une pierre qui ne tranquillisait pas de si tôt.*

## XXIV.—A VISIT TO BEDLAM.

The unfortunate young lady<sup>1</sup> had till now<sup>2</sup> seemed entranced in thought,<sup>3</sup> with<sup>4</sup> her eyes fixed on a little garnet-ring she wore on her finger:<sup>5</sup> she turned them now<sup>6</sup> upon Harley. "Willy is no more!" said she, "do you weep for my Willy? Blessings<sup>7</sup> on your tears! I would<sup>8</sup> weep too, but my brain is dry; and it burns, it burns, it burns!" She drew nearer<sup>9</sup> to Harley. "Be comforted, young lady," said he, "your Willy is in heaven." "Is he, indeed, and shall we meet<sup>10</sup> again? And shall that frightful man (pointing to<sup>11</sup> the keeper) not be there? Alas! I am grown naughty of late: I have almost forgotten to think of heaven; yet I pray sometimes; when I can,<sup>12</sup> I pray, and sometimes I sing; when I am saddest, I sing. You shall hear me; hush!

"Light be the earth on Willy's breast,  
And green the sod that wraps his grave!"

There was a plaintive wildness<sup>13</sup> in the air not<sup>14</sup> to be withstood; and except the keepers, there was not an unmoistened eye<sup>15</sup> around her.—MACKENZIE.

<sup>1</sup> *Young lady* = *jeune fille*. <sup>2</sup> *Jusqu' alors*. Now is translated by *alors* in time past. <sup>3</sup> *Entranced in thought* = *plongée dans une profonde méditation*. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. XXIX. Note<sup>2</sup>, Part I. <sup>5</sup> *On her*

*finger = au doigt.* <sup>6</sup> See <sup>2</sup> above. <sup>7</sup> *Blessings on your tears!* = *que vos larmes soient bénies!* <sup>8</sup> *I would* = *je voudrais*. The verb *vouloir* is used and not the conditional of *to weep*, because some emphasis is laid on *would*. <sup>9</sup> *To draw near to* = *s'approcher de*. <sup>10</sup> See Ex. V. Note <sup>4</sup>, Part I. <sup>11</sup> *To point* = *indiquer*; *montrer au doigt*. <sup>12</sup> *When I can* = *quand je le peux*; *quand cela m'est possible*. <sup>13</sup> *There was a plaintive wildness* = *il y avait quelque chose de plaintif et de sauvage*. See Ex. LIX. Note <sup>2</sup>, Part I. <sup>14</sup> *Not to be withstood* = *auquel on ne pouvait pas résister*. <sup>15</sup> *There was not an unmoistened eye around her* — *il n'y avait pas autour d'elle un seul œil qui ne fût humide*. See Ex. XXXVIII. Note <sup>10</sup> and <sup>11</sup>, Part I.

## *mit* XXV.—THE MISANTHROPIST.

The education of your youth is preposterous: you waste at school years in<sup>1</sup> improving talents, without ever having spent an hour in<sup>1</sup> discovering them; one promiscuous line of instruction is followed,<sup>2</sup> without regard to<sup>3</sup> genius, capacity, or probable situation in the commonwealth. From this bear-garden of the pedagogue, a raw unprincipled boy is turned loose<sup>4</sup> upon the world to travel, without any ideas but<sup>5</sup> those of improving his dress at Paris, or starting into taste, by<sup>6</sup> gazing on some paintings at Rome. Ask him about<sup>7</sup> the manners of the people, and he will tell you, that the skirt is worn<sup>8</sup> much shorter in France, and that everybody eats macaroni in Italy. When he returns home,<sup>9</sup> he buys a seat in<sup>10</sup> parliament, and studies the constitution at Arthur's.<sup>11</sup>—  
MACKENZIE.

<sup>1</sup> *A*, with the infinitive. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>, Part I. <sup>3</sup> *Without regard to* = *sans avoir égard à*. <sup>4</sup> *To turn loose* = *lâcher*; *laisser aller librement*. <sup>5</sup> *Any . . . but* = *d'autre . . . que*. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. VII. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>7</sup> *Ask him about* = *faites-lui des questions au sujet de*. <sup>8</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>, Part I. <sup>9</sup> *Home* = *chez lui*. <sup>10</sup> *In* = *au*. See Ex. V. Note <sup>5</sup>, Part I. <sup>11</sup> See Ex. XIII. Note <sup>17</sup>, Part I.

*Print* XXVI.—WACKFORD SQUEERS, ESQ.

Mr. Squeers's appearance was not prepossessing. He had but one eye, and the popular prejudice runs in favour of two. The eye he had, was unquestionably useful, but decidedly not ornamental: being of a greenish grey,<sup>1</sup> and in shape<sup>2</sup> resembling<sup>3</sup> the fan-light of a street-door. The blank side of his face was much wrinkled and puckered up, which<sup>4</sup> gave him a very sinister appearance, especially when he smiled, at which times<sup>5</sup> his expression bordered closely on<sup>6</sup> the villainous. His hair was very flat and shiny, save at the ends,<sup>7</sup> where it was brushed stiffly up<sup>8</sup> from a low protruding forehead, which assorted well with his harsh voice and coarse manner. He was<sup>9</sup> about two or three and fifty, and a trifle below the middle<sup>10</sup> size; he wore a white neckerchief with<sup>11</sup> long ends, and a suit of scholastic black; but his coat sleeves being a great deal<sup>12</sup> too long, and his trousers a great deal too short, he appeared ill at ease<sup>13</sup> in his clothes, and as if he were in a perpetual state of astonishment at<sup>14</sup> finding himself so respectable.—CHARLES DICKENS.

<sup>1</sup> Of a greenish grey = *d'un gris verdâtre*. <sup>2</sup> In shape = *par la forme*. <sup>3</sup> To resemble = *ressembler à*. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. X. Note <sup>9</sup>, Part II. <sup>5</sup> Moments. <sup>6</sup> Bordered closely on = *touchait de près à; frisait*. <sup>7</sup> Bout. <sup>8</sup> Brossé droit en l'air. <sup>9</sup> Il avait environ cinquante deux ou cinquante trois ans. <sup>10</sup> The middle size = *la taille moyenne*. <sup>11</sup> With long ends = *à longs bouts* (*with* = *à*, before a noun attribute). <sup>12</sup> A great deal = *beaucoup*. <sup>13</sup> Ill at ease = *mal à son aise*. <sup>14</sup> At finding himself = *de se trouver*.

*Print* XXVII.—STERNE AND THE MONK.

As I pronounced the words *great claims* (poverty), he gave a slight glance with his eyes downwards<sup>1</sup> upon the sleeve of his tunic. I felt the full force of the appeal. "I acknowledge it," said I, "a coarse habit, and that<sup>2</sup> but<sup>3</sup>

once in three years, with meagre diet—are no great matters: and the true point of pity is, as they can be earned<sup>4</sup> in the world with so little industry, that your order should wish<sup>5</sup> to procure them, by<sup>6</sup> pressing upon a fund, which is the property of the lame, the blind, the aged, and the infirm; and had you been<sup>7</sup> of the *Order of Mercy*, instead of the *Order of St. Francis*, poor as I am,”<sup>8</sup> continued I, pointing<sup>9</sup> to my portmanteau, “full cheerfully should it have been opened to you for the ransom of the unfortunate.” The monk made me a bow. “But of all others,” resumed I, “the unfortunate of our own country, surely, have the first rights; and I have left thousands in distress upon our own shore.” The monk gave a cordial wave with his head<sup>10</sup>—as much<sup>11</sup> as to say: No doubt there is misery enough<sup>12</sup> in every corner of the world, as well as within our convent. “But we distinguish,” said I, laying<sup>13</sup> my hand upon the sleeve of his tunic, in return for his appeal—“we distinguish, my good father, betwixt those who wish only to eat the bread of their own labour, and those who eat the bread of other people’s, and have no other<sup>14</sup> plan in life, but to get through it<sup>15</sup> in sloth and ignorance for the love of God.”—STERNE.

<sup>1</sup> He gave a slight glance with his eyes downwards = *il jeta un léger coup d'œil*. <sup>2</sup> This = *ceci*, when meaning this thing; that = *cela*, when meaning that thing. <sup>3</sup> But, only = *seulement*. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>, Part I. <sup>5</sup> Should wish to procure them = *désire se les procurer*. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. VII. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>7</sup> Turn, and if you had been. <sup>8</sup> Poor as I am = *tout pauvre que je suis*: no doubt, no subjunctive. Note.—*Quelque pauvre que je sois* would mean however poor I may be. There is here some doubt entertained, and the subjunctive is used. <sup>9</sup> See Ex. XXIV. Note <sup>11</sup>, Part II. <sup>10</sup> Gave a cordial wave with his head = *secoua la tête cordialement*. <sup>11</sup> As much as to say = *comme pour dire*. <sup>12</sup> Turn, enough misery, and see Rule Ex. XI. Note <sup>17</sup>, Part I. <sup>13</sup> Laying my hand = *posant la main*. <sup>14</sup> Have no other . . . but = *n'ont d'autre . . . que*. <sup>15</sup> To get through it = *de passer leur vie*.

## *Chapitre* XXVIII.—RURAL LIFE.

The foreigner who would<sup>1</sup> form a correct opinion of the English character must not confine<sup>2</sup> his observations to the metropolis. He must go forth into the country; he must sojourn in villages and hamlets; he must visit castles, villas, farm-houses, and cottages; he must wander through parks and gardens, along hedges and green lanes; he must loiter about country churches, attend<sup>3</sup> wakes and fairs, and other rural festivals; and cope with the people in all their conditions, and all their habits and humours.

It is in the country that the Englishman gives scope<sup>4</sup> to his natural feelings. He gladly breaks loose<sup>5</sup> from the cold formalities and negative civilities of town, throws off his habits of shy reserve, and becomes joyous and freehearted. He manages to collect round him all the conveniences and elegancies of polite life and banish its<sup>6</sup> restraints. His country-seat abounds with every requisite, either for studious retirement, tasteful gratification, or rural exercise. Books, paintings, music, horses, dogs, and sporting implements of all kinds are at hand.<sup>7</sup> He puts no constraint,<sup>8</sup> either<sup>9</sup> upon his guests or himself, but, in the true spirit of hospitality, provides the means of enjoyment, and leaves every one to partake according to his own inclination.—WASHINGTON IRVING.

<sup>1</sup> Emphasis is laid on *would*, use the verb *vouloir*. <sup>2</sup> *Must not confine his observations to the metropolis* = *ne doit pas se borner à observer la ville*. <sup>3</sup> *To attend* = *aller voir*. <sup>4</sup> *To give scope* = *donner libre carrière*. <sup>5</sup> = *to break loose* = *s'affranchir*. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. XXXII. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part I. <sup>7</sup> *At hand* = *à sa disposition, près de lui, sous la main*. <sup>8</sup> *He puts no constraint* = *il n'impose de contrainte*. <sup>9</sup> *Either . . . or* = *soit . . . soit*; *soit . . . ou*, in affirmative sentences; *ni . . . ni*, with *ne* before the verb, in negative sentences.



## XXIX.—REFLECT BEFORE YOU ACT.

A certain Cham of Tartary going a progress<sup>1</sup> with his nobles, ~~was met by~~ a dervise who cried with<sup>2</sup> a loud voice: *Whoever will give me a hundred pieces of gold, I will give him a piece\* of\* advice."* *bon conseil*

The Cham ordered<sup>3</sup> him the sum; upon which the dervise said: "Begin nothing of which<sup>4</sup> thou hast<sup>5</sup> not<sup>6</sup> well considered the end." *peu lui considérées.*

The courtiers, upon hearing this plain sentence, smiled, and said with a sneer: "The dervise is well paid for his maxim."

But the king was so well satisfied with<sup>2</sup> the answer, that he ordered it<sup>7</sup> to be written in golden letters in several places of his palace, and engraved on all his plate. Not long after,<sup>8</sup> the king's surgeon was bribed<sup>9</sup> to kill him with a poisoned lancet at the time he let him blood. *Don son moment il le tua*

One day, when the king's arm was bound, ~~and~~<sup>10</sup> the fatal lancet in the surgeon's hand, ~~read~~ on the basin: *peu le contigu*

"Begin nothing of which thou hast not well considered the end." He immediately started, and let<sup>11</sup> the lancet fall out of his hands. *le conseil*

The king observed his confusion and inquired<sup>12</sup> the reason; the surgeon fell prostrate, *marqué* and confessed the whole affair; *and* was pardoned, and the conspirators died. The Cham, turning<sup>13</sup> to his courtiers, told them: "That counsel could not be too much valued, which had saved a king's life."—*The Spectator.* *à l'aulx*

<sup>1</sup> Going a progress = étant en voyage. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. XII. Note<sup>2</sup>, Part I.

<sup>3</sup> Ordered him the sum = ordonna qu'on lui donnât la somme.

<sup>4</sup> Of which = dont. <sup>5</sup> Use the subjunctive after the relative pronoun dont, preceded by a negative. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. XXXVIII. Note<sup>11</sup>, Part I.

<sup>7</sup> He ordered it to be written = il ordonna qu'on l'écrivît. See Ex. III. Note<sup>1</sup>, and Ex. VII. Rule<sup>4</sup>, Part I. <sup>8</sup> Not long after = peu de temps après.

<sup>9</sup> Was bribed to kill = se laissa décider par des présents à tuer. <sup>10</sup> See Ex. XVII. Note<sup>5</sup>, Part I. <sup>11</sup> Laisser and faire must be immediately followed by the infinitive (old permissive and causative moods). Ex.: Let that man go out = laissez sortir cet homme; Make that child walk = faites marcher cet enfant.

<sup>12</sup> Inquired the reason = lui en demanda la raison.

<sup>13</sup> To turn to = se tourner vers. *échappe*

*\* (ne saurait... appeler un conseil...)*

*Crist* XXX.—HEALTH.

Such is the power of health, that without its<sup>1</sup> co-operation, every other comfort is torpid, and lifeless, as the powers of vegetation without the sun. And yet this bliss is commonly thrown away in thoughtless negligence, or in foolish experiments on our own strength; we let it perish without remembering its<sup>2</sup> value, or waste it, to show how much we have to spare:<sup>3</sup> it is sometimes<sup>4</sup> given up to the management of levity and chance, and sometimes sold for the applause of jollity and debauchery.

Health is equally neglected, and with equal impropriety, by the votaries of business, and the followers of pleasure. Some<sup>5</sup> ruin their health by intemperate studies, others by incessant revels: though it requires no great abilities to prove, that he<sup>6</sup> loses pleasure, who loses health. To the noisy rout of bacchanalian rioters it is almost in vain to offer advice.

Poverty is, indeed, an evil from which we naturally fly; but let us not run from one enemy to another, nor take shelter<sup>7</sup> in the arms of sickness.—JOHNSON.

<sup>1</sup> In the note Ex. XXXII. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part I., it is said translate *its* by *of it* = *en*, and place this pronoun *en* before the verb. In the above sentence there is no verb. One should be introduced. Turn, *without having its co-operation*. <sup>2</sup> See <sup>1</sup> above. *Without remembering its value* = *sans nous rappeler quelle EN est la valeur*.

<sup>3</sup> *To show how much we have to spare* = *pour montrer la quantité dont nous pouvons disposer*. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. XXI. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part II.

<sup>5</sup> *Quelques-uns*. <sup>6</sup> Turn, *he who loses health, loses pleasure*. *He who* = *celui qui*. <sup>7</sup> *To take shelter* = *se réfugier*.

*For May 19<sup>th</sup>*

XXXI.—AUGUSTUS AND MECAENAS.

Augustus Caesar was seated one day ~~on~~<sup>at</sup> his tribunal, judging the causes of those unfortunate Romans who had been arraigned ~~for~~<sup>accused of</sup> the offences of the times; that

is,<sup>1</sup> ~~for~~ having borne arms under Brutus and Cassius, in defence of<sup>2</sup> liberty : some of them he had already condemned,<sup>3</sup> and there was little doubt what would become of<sup>4</sup> the rest ; when Mæcenas, whether<sup>5</sup> by chance or design, stepped into<sup>6</sup> the court. ~~It~~ was extremely crowded,<sup>7</sup> and quite impossible to approach the tribunal. He<sup>8</sup> therefore took his tablets, wrote a sentence in them,<sup>8</sup> and desired<sup>9</sup> them to be handed to the judge. Augustus opened them, and read this short sentence : " Executioner ! it is time to rise." Augustus ~~was~~ struck, instantly deserted the tribunal, and the arraigned were acquitted, to a man.<sup>10</sup> Such was the method, which this minister employed to humanize his prince ; and this adventure places the prince and the minister in<sup>11</sup> a very advantageous light.

<sup>1</sup> C'est-à-dire. <sup>2</sup> In defence of = pour la défense de. <sup>3</sup> Some of them he had already condemned. Some, see Ex. XXX. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part II., of them = en, before the verb ; before the auxiliary, if the verb be written in a compound tense. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. XXIII. Note <sup>7</sup>, Part I. <sup>5</sup> Whether . . . or = soit . . . ou. <sup>6</sup> To step into = entrer dans. <sup>7</sup> To crowd = encombrer par la foule. <sup>8</sup> In it, in them, there, therein = y, pronoun to be placed before the verb. <sup>9</sup> And desired them to be handed to the judge = et pria le public de les passer au juge. <sup>10</sup> Turn, and the arraigned were all acquitted. <sup>11</sup> In a very advantageous light = sous un jour très-avantageux.

### XXXII.—JUDGE ROBINSON AND MR. CURRAN.

Soon after Mr. Curran had been called to the bar, on some statement of Judge Robinson's, the young counsel observed, that : " he had never met the law, as<sup>1</sup> laid down by his lordship, in any book in his library." " That may be, sir," said the judge ; " but I suspect that your library is very small." Mr. Curran replied : " I find it<sup>2</sup> more instructive, my lord, to study good works than to<sup>3</sup> compose bad ones.<sup>4</sup> My books may be few,<sup>5</sup> but, the title-pages give me the writers' names, and my shelf is not disgraced by any such rank absurdities, that their very authors are ashamed to own<sup>6</sup> them." " Sir," said

the judge, "you are forgetting the respect which you owe to the dignity of the judicial character." "Dignity!" exclaimed Mr. Curran; "my lord, when the person intrusted with the dignity of the judgment-seat lays it aside for a moment to enter into a disgraceful personal contest, it is in vain, when he has been worsted in the encounter, that he seeks to resume it; it is in vain that he tries to shelter himself behind an authority which he has abandoned."<sup>7</sup> "If you say another word I will<sup>8</sup> commit you," replied the angry judge; to which Mr. Curran retorted: "If your lordship shall do<sup>9</sup> so, we shall both of us have the consolation of reflecting, that I am not the worst thing your lordship has<sup>10</sup> committed."—BROUGHAM.

<sup>1</sup> *As laid down by his lordship = telle que sa seigneurerie l'établissait.* <sup>2</sup> *Turn, I find that it is more instructive.* <sup>3</sup> *After than an infinitive must be preceded by de.* <sup>4</sup> *One, ones* are not translated after an adjective. Adjectives of quality may in French be used as nouns. Ex.: *You are a lazy fellow = vous êtes un paresseux; the little ones were in the nest = les petits étaient dans le nid. Than to compose bad ones = que d'en composer de mauvais.* See Note<sup>3</sup> above. <sup>5</sup> *Few = peu nombreux.* <sup>6</sup> *To own = avouer, reconnaître.* <sup>7</sup> See Ex. III. Note<sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>8</sup> See Ex. XL. Note<sup>9</sup>, Part I. <sup>9</sup> Write the verb in the indicative present. <sup>10</sup> See Rule Ex. XXXVIII. Note<sup>10</sup>, Part I.

### *Ex. XXXIII.*—AN IRISH RUSE.

Though a side box, close to where we sat,<sup>1</sup> was completely filled, we beheld the door burst open, and an Irish gentleman attempt to make entry *vi et armis*. "Shut the door, box-keeper!" loudly cried some of the party.<sup>2</sup> "There is room,<sup>3</sup> by the powers!" cried the Irishman, and persisted in advancing. On this,<sup>4</sup> a gentleman of the second row rose, and exclaimed, "Turn out<sup>5</sup> that blackguard!" "Oh, and is that your mode, honey?" coolly retorted the Irishman; "come, come out, my dear, and give me satisfaction, or I will<sup>6</sup> pull your nose, you coward,<sup>7</sup> and *shillaly* you through the lobby."

This public insult left the tenant in possession no alternative; so<sup>8</sup> he rushed out to accept the challenge; when, to the pit's<sup>9</sup> general amusement, the Irishman jumped into his place, and having deliberately seated and adjusted himself, he turned round<sup>10</sup> and cried: "I'll talk to you after the play is over."—REYNOLDS'S *Memoirs*.

<sup>1</sup> Close to where we sat = tout près de l'endroit où nous étions assis. <sup>2</sup> Party = compagnie. <sup>3</sup> Room = place. The English word place is generally translated by endroit or lieu; the French word place means room or square. Ex.: There is room for two = il y a place or de la place pour deux; Trafalgar Square = Place Trafalgar. <sup>4</sup> On this, on that, thereupon = là-dessus. <sup>5</sup> To turn out = mettre à la porte; chasser. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. XL. Note<sup>9</sup>, Part I. <sup>7</sup> You coward = lâche que vous êtes. <sup>8</sup> So = aussi. See Ex. XXVII. Note<sup>12</sup>, Part I. <sup>9</sup> Pit = parterre (masc.) <sup>10</sup> To turn round = se retourner. See Ex. XXXV. Note<sup>2</sup>, and Ex. XXVI. Note<sup>14</sup>, Part I.

#### XXXIV.—ENGLISH SCENERY.

Nothing can be more imposing than the magnificence of English park scenery. Vast lawns that extend like sheets of vivid green, with here<sup>1</sup> and there clumps of gigantic trees, heaping up rich piles of foliage. The solemn pomp of groves and woodland glades, with the deer trooping in silent herds across them; the hare bounding away to the covert, or the pheasant bursting upon the wing. The brook, taught to wind in natural meanderings, or expand into a glassy lake; the sequestered pool, reflecting the quivering trees, with the yellow leaf sleeping on its bosom, and the trout roaming fearlessly through its<sup>2</sup> limpid waters; while some rustic temple or sylvan statue, grown green and dark with<sup>3</sup> age, gives an air of classic sanctity to the seclusion.

These are but a few<sup>4</sup> of the features of park scenery; but what most<sup>5</sup> delights me, is the creative talent with which the English decorate the unostentatious abodes of middle life. The rudest habitation, the most un-

promising and scanty portion of land, in the hands of an Englishman of taste, becomes a little paradise.

The great charm, however, of English scenery is the moral feeling that seems to pervade<sup>1</sup> it. It is associated in the mind with ideas of order, of quiet, of sober, well-established principles, of hoary usage and reverend custom. Everything seems to be the growth of ages of regular and peaceful existence.—WASHINGTON IRVING.

<sup>1</sup> Here and there = *ça et là*. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. XXX. Notes <sup>1</sup> and <sup>2</sup>, Part <sup>3</sup>. <sup>3</sup> With age = *par l'âge; de vieillesse*. <sup>4</sup> These are but a few = *ce ne sont là que quelques uns*. <sup>5</sup> Most = *le plus*. See Ex. I. Note <sup>2</sup>, Part I. <sup>6</sup> That seems to pervade it = *qui semble y avoir pénétré; qui semble y régner*.

### XXXV.—A VISIT IN ENGLAND.

A Russian of my acquaintance visited England (with a small portmanteau) about two years ago. Good heavens! How<sup>1</sup> he abused us! Never was so rude, so barbarous, so suspicious a people.<sup>2</sup> I saw him a few months ago, having just paid<sup>3</sup> us a second visit: he was (in raptures) with all<sup>4</sup> he saw; never was a people so improved; his table was crowded with<sup>5</sup> cards; how<sup>6</sup> hospitable we were! The master of the hotel had displaced an English family to accommodate him; what a refined consideration for a foreigner! *Enfin*

Whence rose this difference in the Russian's estimate of us? His uncle was dead, he had come into<sup>7</sup> a great property. In neither case had our good people<sup>8</sup> looked at the foreigner: they had looked, the first time, at the small portmanteau, and the second at the three carriages and four.<sup>9</sup>

But if the commercial spirit makes us attach undue importance to wealth, it keeps alive also a spirit of honesty as the best means to acquire it. Thus the same causes that produce our defects, conspire<sup>9</sup> to produce many of our merits. The effect of commerce is to make men trustworthy in their ordinary dealings and in their

social relations. <sup>et</sup> <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> It does not this by a sense of virtue alone, but that of self-interest.<sup>10</sup> A trader soon discovers that honesty <sup>est</sup> is the best policy. If you travel through Italy and <sup>11</sup> your carriage breaks down, <sup>12</sup> there is perhaps but one smith in the place, <sup>13</sup> who repairs your carriage at ten times the value of the labour, <sup>14</sup> ~~he~~ <sup>vous</sup> takes advantage of your condition and his own monopoly of the trade.<sup>15</sup>—BULWER.

<sup>1</sup> *How* = *comme*. *How* is also translated by *combien* and *que*. See Ex. XXXIX. Note <sup>9</sup>, Part I. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. XXVI. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>3</sup> *To pay a visit* = *faire une visite*. <sup>4</sup> *All* = *tout ce qui* (nom.); *tout ce que* (accus.) <sup>5</sup> See Ex. XII. Note <sup>9</sup>. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. XXXIX. Note <sup>9</sup>, Part I. <sup>7</sup> *To come into* (money, property) = *Hériter de*. <sup>8</sup> *Three carriages and four* = *trois voitures à quatre chevaux*. <sup>9</sup> *Conspire* = *se réunissent*. <sup>10</sup> *Self-interest* = *intérêt personnel*. <sup>11</sup> See Ex. XVII. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part I., and observe the exception to the rule given therein. <sup>12</sup> *To break down* = *se briser*. <sup>13</sup> See Ex. XXXIII. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part II. <sup>14</sup> See Ex. XXXVIII. Note <sup>15</sup>, Part I. <sup>15</sup> *And his own monopoly of the trade* = *et de ce qu'il est le seul de son métier*.

*\* que ce qui* l'instabilité *est*

### XXXVI.—THE POINT OF HONOUR.

An English peer, who has not been long dead,<sup>1</sup> used to tell a pleasant story of a French gentleman that visited him early one morning at Paris, and<sup>2</sup> after great professions of respect, let him know that he had it<sup>3</sup> in his power to oblige him; which,<sup>4</sup> in short, amounted<sup>5</sup> to this, that he believed he<sup>6</sup> could tell his lordship the person's name who jostled him as he came out of the opera, but before he<sup>7</sup> would proceed, he begged his lordship that he would not deny<sup>8</sup> him the honour of making him his second.<sup>9</sup> The English lord, to avoid<sup>10</sup> being drawn into a very foolish affair, told him, that he was under engagements for his two next duels to a couple of particular friends. Upon which the gentleman immediately withdrew, hoping his lordship would not take it ill if he meddled<sup>11</sup> no further<sup>12</sup> in an affair from whence<sup>13</sup> he himself was to<sup>14</sup> receive no advantage.—*Spectator*.

<sup>1</sup> *Qui est mort il n'y a que peu de temps.* <sup>2</sup> Repeat the relative pronoun. <sup>3</sup> *He had it in his power to = il avait le pouvoir de.* <sup>4</sup> *Which = ce qui*; it refers to no particular noun, but to the preceding sentence. <sup>5</sup> *Amounted to this = revenait à ceci.* See Ex. XXVII. Note <sup>2</sup>, Part II. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. XXVII. Note <sup>11</sup>, Part I. <sup>7</sup> *Before he would proceed = avant de continuer.* The same rule as Note <sup>6</sup> above. <sup>8</sup> *Refuser.* <sup>9</sup> *Second (in duels) = témoin.* <sup>10</sup> *To avoid = éviter de*, followed by the infinitive of the verb, which is written in English in the present participle. <sup>11</sup> *To meddle in = se mêler de.* <sup>12</sup> *No further = ne . . . davantage.* See Ex. II. Note <sup>8</sup>, and Ex. XXII. Note <sup>10</sup>, Part I. <sup>13</sup> *From whence = d'où.* <sup>14</sup> See Ex. XVII. Note <sup>8</sup>, Part I.

### XXXVII—OLIVER TWIST ASKS FOR SOME MORE.

Child<sup>1</sup> as he was, he was desperate with<sup>2</sup> hunger, and reckless with<sup>2</sup> misery. He rose from the table; and advancing<sup>3</sup> to<sup>4</sup> the master, basin and spoon in<sup>5</sup> hand, said: "Please, sir, I want some more."

The master was a fat, healthy man; but he turned very pale. He gazed in stupefied astonishment on the small rebel for<sup>6</sup> some seconds, and then clung for support to the copper. The assistants were paralyzed with<sup>2</sup> wonder; the boys<sup>7</sup> with<sup>2</sup> fear.

"What!" said the master in<sup>8</sup> a faint voice.

"Please, sir," replied Oliver, "I want some more."

The master aimed a blow at Oliver's head with the ladle; pinioned him in his arms; and shrieked aloud for the beadle.

The Board were sitting in solemn conclave, when Mr. Bumble rushed into the room in great excitement, and addressing the gentleman in the high chair,<sup>9</sup> said: "Mr. Limbkins, I beg your pardon, sir! Oliver Twist has asked for more!"

There was a general start. Horror was depicted on every countenance.

"For more!" said Mr. Limbkins. "Compose yourself,<sup>10</sup> Bumble, and answer me distinctly. Do I understand that he asked for more, after he<sup>11</sup> had eaten the supper allotted by the dietary?"



"He did,<sup>12</sup> sir," replied Bumble.

"That boy will be hung," said the gentleman in<sup>13</sup> the white waistcoat. "I know that boy will be hung."

Nobody controverted the prophetic gentleman's opinion. An animated discussion took<sup>14</sup> place. Oliver was ordered into instant confinement; and a bill<sup>15</sup> was next morning pasted on the outside of the gate, offering a reward of five pounds to anybody<sup>16</sup> who would take Oliver Twist off the hands of the parish. In other words, five pounds and Oliver Twist to any man or woman who wanted an apprentice to any trade, business, or calling.—CHARLES DICKENS.

<sup>1</sup> Child as he was. See Ex. XXVII. Note <sup>8</sup>, Part II.—*Tout enfant qu'il était.* *Enfant*, noun used as an adjective; *tout*, adverb. Rule.—*Tout*, adverb, remains invariable. However, it becomes adjective, or at least agrees like one, in gender and number, when immediately followed by an adjective or a participle feminine, beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirate. Ex.: *elle est tout aimable*; but *elle est toute changée*. This is done to prevent a sound thoroughly masculine, *tout*, before one feminine. When the adjective begins with a vowel, the *t* of *tout* is carried on that vowel and the ear is then satisfied. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. XII. Note <sup>9</sup>, Part I. <sup>3</sup> To advance = *s'avancer*. <sup>4</sup> To, towards = *vers*. <sup>5</sup> See Ex. V. Note <sup>5</sup>, Part I. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. VII. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part II. <sup>7</sup> Turn, *The boys were with fear.* See Ex. XXI. Note <sup>12</sup>, Part I. <sup>8</sup> De. <sup>9</sup> In the high chair = *qui présidait*. <sup>10</sup> Compose yourself = *calmez-vous*. <sup>11</sup> Turn, after having eaten, and See Ex. XXVII. Note <sup>11</sup>, Part I. <sup>12</sup> He did = *oui*. <sup>13</sup> In the white waistcoat = *au gilet blanc* (attribute) See Ex. XXVI. Note <sup>11</sup>, Part II. <sup>14</sup> To take place = *avoir lieu*. <sup>15</sup> To paste a bill = *poser une affiche*. <sup>16</sup> To anybody who would = *à quiconque voudrait*; *à toute personne qui voudrait*.

### XXXVIII.—LUCIAN ON DANCING.

Lucian, in one of his dialogues, introduces a philosopher, chiding his friend for his being<sup>1</sup> a lover of dancing, and a frequenter<sup>2</sup> of balls. The other undertakes the defence of his favourite diversion, which, he says, was at first invented by the goddess Rhea, and preserved the life of Jupiter himself from the cruelty of his father

*en disant  
qu'il s'ille*

Saturn. He proceeds to show, that it had been ap-  
proved by (the greatest men) in<sup>2</sup> all ages; that Homer  
calls Merion a fine dancer; and says, that the graceful  
mien and great agility which he had acquired by the  
exercise, distinguished him above the rest of the armies,  
both<sup>3</sup> of Greeks and Trojans.

He adds, that Pyrrhus gains more reputation by<sup>4</sup>  
inventing the dance which is called after his name, than  
by all his other actions: that the Lacedæmonians, who  
were the bravest people in<sup>2</sup> Greece, gave great encourage-  
ment to this diversion, and made<sup>5</sup> their Hormus (a  
dance much resembling the French brawl) famous all  
over<sup>6</sup> Asia: that there were still extant some Thessalian  
statues erected to the honour of their best dancers: and  
that he wondered how<sup>7</sup> his brother philosopher<sup>8</sup> could  
declare himself against the opinions of those two persons,  
whom he professed so much to admire, Homer and  
Hesiod; the latter of whom compares valour and  
dancing together; and says, "That the gods have  
bestowed fortitude on some men, and on others a dis-  
position for dancing."

Lastly, he puts<sup>9</sup> him in mind that Socrates (who, in  
the judgment<sup>10</sup> of Apollo, was the wisest of men) was  
not only a professed admirer of this exercise in<sup>11</sup> others,  
but learned it himself when he was an old man.—  
BUDGELL, *The Spectator*.

<sup>1</sup> For his being = pour être. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part I. <sup>3</sup> See Ex. XVIII. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part II. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. VII. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>5</sup> To make, meaning to render, is rendre. <sup>6</sup> All over Asia = dans toute l'Asie. <sup>7</sup> See Ex. VII. Note <sup>9</sup>, Part I. <sup>8</sup> Frère en philosophie. <sup>9</sup> He puts him in mind = il lui rappelle. <sup>10</sup> In the judgment = aux yeux. A mes yeux (liter.) = before my eyes; à mes yeux (figur.) = in my judgment, in my opinion, in my eyes. <sup>11</sup> In others = chez les autres. See Ex. XIII. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part II.

### XXXIX.—SCOTCH LUXURY.

The Laird of Keppoch, chieftain of a branch of the McDonalds, in a winter campaign against a neighbouring

laid, with whom he was at variance about <sup>à l'égard de</sup> a possession, gave orders<sup>1</sup> for rolling a snow-ball<sup>2</sup> to lay under his<sup>3</sup> head in the night; whereupon<sup>4</sup> his followers<sup>5</sup> murmured, saying:<sup>6</sup> "Now we despair of victory, since<sup>7</sup> our leader is become so effeminate that he can't sleep without a pillow."

<sup>1</sup> To give orders = donner l'ordre. See Rule, Ex. VII. Note <sup>4</sup>, Part I. <sup>2</sup> Snow-ball = boule de neige. <sup>3</sup> See Rule, Ex. LXXVIII. Note <sup>7</sup>, Part I. <sup>4</sup> Sur quoi. <sup>5</sup> Partisans. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. VI. Note <sup>11</sup>, Part II. <sup>7</sup> Since (prep. of time) = depuis que; since, conjunction, is puisque; (of time) depuis que.

X nous ne pouvons plus espérer la victoire.

## XXI.—CATO MEETING THE CORPSE OF HIS SON.

Welcome,<sup>1</sup> my son! Here lay him down, my friends,  
Full in my sight, that<sup>2</sup> I may view at leisure  
The bloody<sup>3</sup> corpse, and count those glorious wounds.  
How<sup>4</sup> beautiful is death, when earn'd by virtue!  
Who would<sup>5</sup> not be that youth? What pity is it,  
That we can die but once to serve our country!  
Why sits this sadness on your brows, my friends?  
I should have blushed, if Cato's house had stood  
Secure, and flourished in a civil war.  
Portius, behold thy brother, and remember,  
Thy life is<sup>6</sup> not thy own, when Rome demands it.

ADDISON.

<sup>1</sup> Welcome = sois le bienvenu. <sup>2</sup> That, in order that. <sup>3</sup> Bloody = sanguinaire, when meaning bloodthirsty; and sanglant, when meaning covered with blood, where blood is shed. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. XXXV. Note <sup>10</sup>, Part I. <sup>5</sup> Conditional of vouloir. <sup>6</sup> Is not thy own = ne t'appartient pas.

## XXII.—TEUFELSDRÖCKH.

Of good society Teufelsdröckh appears to have seen little, or has mostly forgotten what he saw. He speaks out with a strange plainness; calls many things by their

la plume des choses

~~more dictionary names.~~ To<sup>1</sup> him the upholsterer is no pontiff, neither is any drawing-room a temple, were<sup>2</sup> it never so begilt and overhung: "A whole imensity of Brussels carpets, and pier-glasses, and ormolu," as he himself expresses it, <sup>ne peut pas</sup> cannot hide from me that such a drawing-room is simply a section of infinite space, where so many<sup>3</sup> God-created souls do for the time meet<sup>4</sup> together." / To Teufelsdröckh the highest duchess is respectable, is venerable; but nowise for her pearl bracelets and Maline laces: in his eyes,<sup>5</sup> the star<sup>6</sup> of a lord is little less and little more than the broad button of Birmingham spelter in a clown's smock; "each is an implement," he says, "in its kind; a tag for hooking together; and, for the rest, was dug from the earth, and hammered on a stithy before smiths' fingers." Thus does the professor look in men's faces with a strange impartiality, a strange scientific freedom; like a man unversed in the higher circles, like a man dropped thither from the moon.—THOMAS CARLYLE, *Sartor Resartus*.

<sup>1</sup> Pour. <sup>2</sup> Were it never so begilt and overhung = *fût-il couvert d'or et de tableaux*. <sup>3</sup> Un certain nombre. <sup>4</sup> To meet together = *se réunir*. <sup>5</sup> In his eyes = *à ses yeux*. See Ex. V. Note <sup>5</sup>, Part I., and Ex. XXXVIII. Note <sup>10</sup>, Part II. <sup>6</sup> Crachat, décoration.

*God-created = Créatures de Dieu.*

## XLII.—CHARLES THE BOLD.

The history of Charles is a history of the highest and most varied interest. The tale, as a mere tale, as a narrative of personal adventure and a display of personal character, is one of the most attractive in European history. As such it has been chosen by Scott as the material for two of his novels, one of which,<sup>1</sup> if not absolutely one of his masterpieces, at any rate ranks high<sup>2</sup> among his writings. It is probably from *Quentin Durward* that most<sup>3</sup> English readers have drawn their ideas of Louis the Eleventh and of Charles the Bold; some may even have drawn their main ideas of the fights

of Grandson, Morat, and Nancy from the hurried <sup>4</sup> narrative in *Anne of Geierstein*. In fact a nobler subject, whether <sup>5</sup> for romance, or poetry, or tragedy, can hardly be conceived than the exaltation and the fall of the renowned <sup>6</sup> Burgundian duke.—E. A. FREEMAN, *Historical Essays*.

<sup>1</sup> One of which = *dont l'un*. <sup>2</sup> To rank high = *occuper un rang élevé*. <sup>3</sup> Most = *la plupart des*. <sup>4</sup> Hurried narrative in = *du récit fait à la hâte qui se trouve dans*. <sup>5</sup> Whether . . . or = *soit . . . soit*. <sup>6</sup> The renowned Burgundian Duke = *le fameux duc de Bourgogne*.

### XLIII.—WILLIAM SAWTRÉ'S CASE.

About the same time, an unfortunate man, named William Sawtré, was actually burnt for heresy. He had been a priest, and held a living<sup>1</sup> in Norfolk; but was deprived for heretical opinions, and afterwards, on recanting,<sup>2</sup> readmitted into the church. He now petitioned parliament that<sup>3</sup> he might be allowed to dispute before them on points of doctrine. The Primate summoned him, as suspected of relapse from the tenor of his petition: he proved contumacious<sup>4</sup> when interrogated; sentence was pronounced against him as a relapsed heretic; and he was delivered over<sup>5</sup> to the constable and marshal. The king, by the advice of the lords spiritual and temporal, ordered him<sup>6</sup> to be publicly burnt, "in abhorrence of his crime, and as an example to all other Christians." It is distinctly settled in this writ that the burning of heretics is enjoined by the law of God as well as<sup>7</sup> of man, and by the canons.<sup>8</sup>—LORD BROUGHAM, *England and France under the House of Lancaster*.

<sup>1</sup> To hold a living (church) = *avoir une cure*. <sup>2</sup> On recanting = *après s'être rétracté*. <sup>3</sup> Il demanda alors au parlement qu'on lui donnât la permission de. <sup>4</sup> He proved contumacious = *il se montra rebelle, obstiné*. *When interrogated* = *quand on l'interrogea*. <sup>5</sup> He was delivered over to = *on le remit entre les mains de*. <sup>6</sup> Turn, he ordered that he should be publicly burnt, and see Rule, Ex. VII. Note <sup>4</sup>, Part I. <sup>7</sup> Turn, as well as that of (the) men. <sup>8</sup> Canons (in church) = *les canons de l'église*.

*Emil*

#### XLIV.—WORDS OF FRENCH ORIGIN.

I have often wished, that as in our constitution there are several persons whose business it is to watch over our laws, our liberties and commerce, certain men might be<sup>1</sup> set apart<sup>2</sup> as superintendents of our language, to hinder any words of a foreign coin from passing among us; and in particular to prohibit any French phrases from becoming current in this kingdom, when those of our stamp are altogether as valuable. The present war has so adulterated our tongue with strange words that it would be impossible for one of our great-grandfathers to know what his posterity have been doing, were he<sup>3</sup> to read their exploits in a modern newspaper. Our warriors are very industrious in propagating the French language, at the same time that they are so gloriously successful in beating down<sup>4</sup> their power. Our soldiers are men of strong heads for action, and perform such feats as they are not able to express. They want<sup>5</sup> words in their own tongue to tell us what it is they achieve, and therefore send us over<sup>6</sup> accounts of their performances in a jargon of phrases, which they learn among their conquered<sup>6</sup> enemies. They ought, however, to be provided with secretaries, and assisted by our foreign ministers, to tell their story for them in plain English, and to let us know in our mother-tongue what it is our brave countrymen are<sup>7</sup> about.—ADDISON, *The Spectator*.

<sup>1</sup> See Rule Ex. VII. Note <sup>4</sup>, Part I. <sup>2</sup> *To set apart = choisir.*  
<sup>3</sup> *Were he to = s'il devait, s'il avait à, s'il venait à, eût-il à.* <sup>4</sup> *To beat down = abattre, rabattre.* <sup>5</sup> *To want = manquer de*, when meaning *to be in want, in need of.* <sup>6</sup> *To conquer = conquérir*, when referring to land conquered; *vaincre*, when referring to soldiers or army conquered, vanquished. <sup>7</sup> *To be about = faire.* See Ex. XXVI. Note <sup>7</sup>, Part I.

*Emil*

#### XLV.—NOT PARTICULAR.

An old exciseman of our town, who was not very rich, had a daughter who, as you shall see, was not very

handsome. It was the opinion of everybody that this young woman would not soon<sup>1</sup> be married, as she wanted<sup>2</sup> two main articles, beauty and fortune. But, for<sup>3</sup> all this, a very well-looking man, that happened to be traveling those parts, came and asked the exciseman for his daughter in marriage. The exciseman, willing to deal<sup>4</sup> openly by him, asked if he had seen the girl; "For," said he, "she is humpbacked." "Very well," cried the stranger, "that<sup>5</sup> will do for me." "Ay," said the exciseman, "but my daughter is as brown as a berry." "So much the better," cried the stranger, "such skin wears<sup>6</sup> well." "But she is bandy-legged." "No matter,<sup>7</sup> her petticoats will hide that defect." "But then she is very poor, and wants<sup>8</sup> an eye." "Your description delights me," cried the stranger: "I have been looking out for one<sup>9</sup> of her make; for I keep an exhibition of wild beasts, and I intend to show<sup>10</sup> her off for a Chimpanzee."—OLIVER GOLDSMITH.

<sup>1</sup> Soon = *de sitôt*. *De sitôt* can only be used in a negative sentence; *tôt, bientôt*, must be used when the sentence is affirmative. <sup>2</sup> As she wanted = *car il lui manquait*. <sup>3</sup> For all this = *malgré tout cela*. <sup>4</sup> Willing to deal openly by him = *voulant agir honnêtement envers lui*. <sup>5</sup> That will do for me = *cela fera mon affaire*. <sup>6</sup> To wear well = *être d'un bon usage*. <sup>7</sup> No matter = *n'importe*. <sup>8</sup> See Note <sup>2</sup> above. <sup>9</sup> One of her make = *une comme elle*. In French one of them. <sup>10</sup> To show off = *faire voir*.

## XLVI.—COLONEL SCHOUARDIN.

The army of Kléber was attacked at Torfou, in 1793, by Charette and Bonchamp: and, unable to resist the superior forces of the Vendéens, retreated<sup>1</sup> and lost its artillery. The republicans were on the point of being destroyed, <sup>Car</sup> as their retreat was about to be cut off. Kléber called to Lieutenant-Colonel Schouardin, and said: "Take a company of grenadiers; stop the enemy at that ravine; you will be killed, but your comrades will be saved." "Oui, mon général," replied Schouardin, *tenir têt*

calmly. He marched; <sup>2</sup> held <sup>3</sup> the Vendéens a long time in check; and after prodigies of valour, died with his army on the spot. This "*Oui, mon général,*" equals the finest specimens of antiquity.

<sup>1</sup> To retreat = *battre en retraite*. <sup>2</sup> He marched means he went away, he set out = *il partit*. <sup>3</sup> To hold in check = *arrêter, empêcher d'avancer*.

## Act XLVII.—STAGE CRITICISM.

Doctor John Hill, author of some farces, and a paper called *The Spectator*, went into the green-room<sup>1</sup> of Covent Garden Theatre, and addressing himself to Mrs. Woffington, of celebrated memory, and the first of actresses, he questioned<sup>2</sup> her, whether she had seen *The Spectator* of that day. The lady answered in<sup>3</sup> the negative. The doctor replied: "Because, if you had,<sup>4</sup> you would have seen my opinion of your performance, last night, in the character of *Calista*." "I am much obliged to you, sir," replied Mrs. Woffington, "for your kind intentions towards me; but, unfortunately, the play of last night had to be changed into the *Journey to London*, in which I played the part of *Lady Townley*."

<sup>1</sup> Green-room = *foyer*. <sup>2</sup> To question = *demander*. <sup>3</sup> She answered in the negative = *elle répondit que non*. <sup>4</sup> Turn, if you had seen it.

## Act XLVIII.—OLD ACQUAINTANCES.

Lord Kaimés <sup>aimait</sup> used to relate the story of a man who claimed the honour of his acquaintance on rather singular grounds. His lordship, returning from the north circuit, <sup>une fois</sup> to Perth, happened one night to sleep at Dunkeld. The next morning, walking towards the ferry, (but) apprehending he<sup>1</sup> had lost<sup>2</sup> his way, he asked a man whom he met<sup>3</sup> to conduct him. The other answered, with<sup>4</sup> much cordiality: "~~I will do that~~ (with<sup>5</sup> all my heart,)

*Il avait des raisons assez curieuses pour s'être de ses amis.*



1 *Est-ce que milord ne de souvient pas*  
 my lord. Does not your lordship remember me? My  
 name is John —, I have had the honour to be before  
 your lordship for<sup>6</sup> stealing sheep! *Comparaître* "Oh! John! I  
 remember you very well; and how is your wife? She  
 had also the honour to be before me, for<sup>7</sup> receiving them,  
 knowing<sup>8</sup> them to be stolen." "At your lordship's  
 service. *à la fois* We were very lucky; we got off<sup>9</sup> for want of  
 evidence; and I am still ~~going on in the~~ butcher  
*peut-être* ~~trade.~~ "Then *alors* (he) replied his lordship, "we may have  
 the honour of meeting<sup>3</sup> again."

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. XXVII. Note <sup>11</sup>, Part I. <sup>2</sup> To lose one's way = *s'égarer*. See Ex. IX. Note <sup>11</sup>, Part I. <sup>3</sup> To meet (neuter) = *se rencontrer*. To meet (active) = *rencontrer* (to meet by chance); *aller à la rencontre de, aller au-devant de* (to meet purposely).  
<sup>4</sup> Avec. Cordiality accompanies the answer. See Ex. XII. Note <sup>9</sup>, Part I. <sup>5</sup> With all my heart = *de tout mon cœur*. The heart does not accompany the action expressed by the verb of the sentence; the action is performed with a feeling coming from the heart. See Ex. XII. Note <sup>9</sup>, Part I. <sup>6</sup> Turn, for having stolen.  
<sup>7</sup> Turn, for having received. <sup>8</sup> Turn, knowing that they had been stolen. <sup>9</sup> We got off for want of evidence = *faute de preuves nous fûmes acquittés*.

#### XLIX.—DANTON AND DESMOULINS.

The day on<sup>1</sup> which Danton was guillotined, several others suffered<sup>2</sup> the same fate. The bag which received the heads of the victims was therefore large. When the fatal axe was falling on the necks of some,<sup>3</sup> others, alighted from the cart, were awaiting their turn at the foot of the scaffold. Camille Desmoulins and Danton were among the latter, and were engaged in conversation, when the executioner came to take<sup>4</sup> Camille Desmoulins to the scaffold. Danton and he approached for the purpose of embracing,<sup>5</sup> but were prevented from doing so by the executioner. "Go, wretch," said Danton to him, "our heads will seek each other<sup>6</sup> in the sack."

<sup>1</sup> On which = *que*. <sup>2</sup> To suffer (to undergo) = *subir*. <sup>3</sup> Quél-  
 qucs-uns. <sup>4</sup> To take (to conduct) = *mener*. <sup>5</sup> To embrace (neuter)

= *s'embrasser*, and see Ex. II. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. XI. Note <sup>9</sup> and Ex. XXV. Note <sup>1</sup>, Part I.

---

### L.—FRIENDS IN NEED.

When Prince Poniatowski, who was afterwards Stanislaus, the last king of Poland, was in this country, his chief<sup>1</sup> companion was Colonel Frederick. They were accustomed to walk together round the suburbs of the town, and to dine at a tavern or common eating-house. On one occasion the prince had some bills to discount in the city, and took Frederick with him to transact the business. The prince remained at Batson's coffee-house, Cornhill, while Frederick was employed<sup>2</sup> on the bills. Some impediment occurred, which prevented the affair from being settled that day, and they proceeded on their usual walk before dinner, round Islington. After their walk, they went to Dolly's in Paternoster-Row. Their dinner was<sup>3</sup> beefsteaks, a pot of porter, and a bottle of port. The bill was presented to the prince, who, on looking<sup>4</sup> over it, said it was reasonable, and handed it to Frederick, who concurred in the same opinion, and returned it to the prince, who desired him to pay. "I have no money," said Frederick. "Nor<sup>5</sup> have I," said the prince; "what are we to do?" Frederick paused a few moments; then desiring the prince to remain until<sup>6</sup> he returned, left the place, and pledged<sup>7</sup> his watch at the nearest pawnbroker's, and thus discharged the reckoning.<sup>8</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Chief (adj.) = *principal*. <sup>2</sup> While Frederick . . on the bills = *pendant que Frédéric s'occupait des billets*. <sup>3</sup> *Se composait de*.  
<sup>4</sup> To look over = *parcourir*. <sup>5</sup> Nor have I = *ni moi non plus*.  
<sup>6</sup> Until he returned = *jusqu'à son retour*. <sup>7</sup> To pledge = *engager*.  
<sup>8</sup> To discharge the reckoning = *régler le compte*.

*Crinit*

## LI.—SEYMOUR.

Seymour, the celebrated painter of horses, having been affronted by Charles, the old haughty Duke of Somerset, in consequence<sup>1</sup> of having intimated that he believed he had<sup>2</sup> the honour to belong to his grace's family, when he was afterwards requested to return to Petworth to complete a picture which no other painter of the day was able to finish, haughtily answered: "My lord, I will<sup>3</sup> now prove that I am of your grace's family—for I won't come." Upon receiving this laconic reply, the duke sent his steward to demand repayment of a loan of one hundred pounds. Seymour briefly replied, that he would write to his grace. He did so,<sup>4</sup> and directed his letter, "Northumberland House, opposite the trunkmaker's, Charing-Cross." Enraged<sup>5</sup> at this additional insult, the duke threw the letter into the fire unopened,<sup>6</sup> ordering his steward at the same time to have<sup>7</sup> him arrested. But Seymour, struck with an opportunity of evasion, carelessly observed, that "It was hasty in his grace to burn his letter, because it contained a bank-note for £100, and that therefore they were quits."

<sup>1</sup> *In consequence of having intimated* = *pour avoir donné à entendre*. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. XXVII. Note <sup>11</sup>, Part I. <sup>3</sup> See Ex. XL. Note <sup>9</sup>, Part I. <sup>4</sup> *He did so* = *il LE fit*, because the active verb *faire* must have a direct object. <sup>5</sup> *Enraged at* = *furieux de*. <sup>6</sup> *Unopened* = *sans l'ouvrir*. <sup>7</sup> *To have him arrested* = *de le faire arrêter*.

## LII.—PUNISHMENT OF COWARDICE.

Captain Frauguet, governor of Fontarabia, having cowardly surrendered that place to the Spaniards, he was condemned to be degraded from the rank of nobility. He was, accordingly, armed<sup>1</sup> from head to foot, and was then placed upon a raised scaffold, where twelve priests, dressed<sup>2</sup> in white surplices, chanted the vigils of the

dead; the sentence, which declared the culprit a traitor, a villain, and convicted of falsehood and broken faith, having been previously read aloud. At the end of each psalm they made a pause, during which a herald stripped<sup>3</sup> the accused of some part of his armour, calling out<sup>4</sup> at the same time, in<sup>5</sup> a loud voice: "This is<sup>6</sup> the helmet of the coward, this is his corslet, his buckler," &c. When the last psalm was finished, a basin of hot water was poured<sup>7</sup> on his head, and he was then lowered from the scaffold, by means of a rope passed under his armpits. Being stretched out upon a hurdle, he was covered with a funeral pall, and was carried in this manner to the church, where the twelve priests surrounded his body, and sang over him the psalm, *Deus laudem meam ne tacueris*, which contains several denunciations against traitors and liars. He was then allowed to go his way,<sup>8</sup> with<sup>9</sup> the brand of infamy thus imprinted on his forehead, for the remainder of his life.

<sup>1</sup> *Armed from head to foot* = *armé de pied en cap*. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. XII. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part I. <sup>3</sup> *To strip* = *dépouiller*. <sup>4</sup> *To call out* = *crier*. <sup>5</sup> *De*. <sup>6</sup> *This is* and *that is* (referring to things pointed to) = *voici, voilà*. <sup>7</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>, and Ex. LXXVIII. Note <sup>7</sup>, Part I. <sup>8</sup> *He was then allowed to go on his way* = *on lui permit alors d'aller où il voulait*. <sup>9</sup> See Ex. XXIX. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I. Observe that before the name of the part of the body, the article is used instead of the possessive adjective.

### LIII.—COLUMBUS.

He was tall and well-made, his head large,<sup>1</sup> with an aquiline nose, small light-blue or greyish eyes, a fresh complexion, and red hair, though incessant toil and exposure had bronzed the former, and bleached the latter, before the age of thirty. He had a majestic presence,<sup>2</sup> with much dignity, and at the same time affability of manner. He was<sup>3</sup> fluent, even eloquent in discourse; generally temperate in deportment, but sometimes hurried by a too lively sensibility into a sally of passion.

He was abstemious in his diet, indulged<sup>4</sup> little in amusements of any kind, and, in truth, seemed too much absorbed by the great cause to which he had consecrated his life, to allow scope for the lower pursuits and pleasures which engage ordinary men.—PRESCOTT.

<sup>1</sup> *Large*, referring to size, is *gros*, and sometimes *fort*. Otherwise *large* is *grand*. The French adjective *large* means *wide*, *broad*. <sup>2</sup> *Presence*, carriage (of a person) = *port* (masc). <sup>3</sup> *To be fluent* = *s'exprimer avec facilité, avoir l'élocution facile*. <sup>4</sup> *To indulge in* = *se livrer à*.

#### LIV.—RATHER CURIOUS.

Cardinal Mazarin, amongst the many victims whom he consigned to the dungeons of the Bastille, had immured one<sup>1</sup> through a trifling mistake in his name. He was at last turned out, with as little ceremony as<sup>2</sup> had been observed in clapping him in. The mistake was explained to him, on<sup>3</sup> his dismissal; but he received a gentle hint to beware of a very dangerous spirit of curiosity which he had evinced during his confinement. Not being very anxious to trespass again on the hospitalities of the Bastille, he ventured to ask what involuntary proof he could have given of this very dangerous spirit of curiosity, in order that he might carefully avoid such an offence for<sup>4</sup> the future; he was then gravely told that he had on one occasion made use of these words to an attendant: "I always thought myself the most insignificant fellow<sup>5</sup> upon the face of the earth, and should be most particularly obliged to you if you would<sup>6</sup> inform me by what means I ever became of sufficient consequence to be shut up in this place."

<sup>1</sup> *One (of them)*. <sup>2</sup> *As had been observed* = *qu'on en avait observé*. <sup>3</sup> *On his dismissal* = *quand on le renvoya*. *On his return* = *à son retour, quand il revint*; *on his arrival* = *à son arrivée, quand il arriva*. It would be the same in sentences like the following; *on his landing, on her coronation, on his accession to the throne*, and so forth. <sup>4</sup> *For the future, in future* = *à l'avenir*. <sup>5</sup> . . . fellow upon the face of the earth = . . . individu qui fût sur la face de

*la terre.* \* Stress is laid upon *would*, the verb *vouloir* must be used. After *if*, it must be written in the imperfect of the indicative.

### LV.—GENERAL ST. ANTHONY.

When the Portuguese threw off the Spanish yoke, the entire success of the enterprise was attributed to the plenary protection of St. Anthony; and the new king, John IV., was compelled to declare his saintship Generalissimo of his armies. The monarch, it is said, blushed to countenance the superstition, but was obliged to meet<sup>1</sup> the wishes of an enthusiastic people, who had<sup>2</sup> just presented him with a crown. The bust of the saint was accordingly carried in solemn procession, and being placed at the head of the army, was, with a most unexampled celerity of promotion, endued<sup>3</sup> successively with the uniforms and insignia of the various grades. He was first made Corporal St. Anthony, Serjeant St. Anthony, Captain St. Anthony, and then Generalissimo St. Anthony. His bust was always carried at the head of the troops. All orders were issued in<sup>4</sup> his name; but, alas! in the first encounter with the enemy, in the neighbourhood of Sabugal, a fatal shot carried away<sup>5</sup> St. Anthony's head! Universal terror immediately pervaded the ranks, and the simple Portuguese paid for their superstition at the price of a complete defeat.

<sup>1</sup> *To meet the wishes of* = *se rendre au désir.* <sup>2</sup> *To have just* = *venir de.* <sup>3</sup> *Endued with* = *revêtu de.* <sup>4</sup> *In his name* = *en son nom.* *In*, in a sentence used with the word *nom*, is translated by *en*, when followed by a possessive adjective, and by *à*, when followed by the article. Ex.: *In my father's name* = *au nom de mon père.* <sup>5</sup> *To carry away* = *emporter*, referring to inanimate things, and *emmener*, referring to persons or animals. The compounds of *mener* and *porter* refer all, the former to persons or animals, the latter to inanimate things: *amener*, *apporter.* *Mener* and *porter* are themselves used in the same way. Ex.: *take this gentleman to the station* = *menez ce monsieur à la station*; *take this letter to the post-office* = *portez cette lettre à la poste.*

## LVI.—THE LITTLE MAN.

Bonaparte retained for<sup>1</sup> a long time the friendships which he had contracted at an early period, and having become First Consul, he continued to receive, at St. Cloud, those friends whom he had known in his humbler fortune. What contributed to make him change his conduct in this respect was, that many<sup>2</sup> of them forgot what was due to the chief of the Government, and this forced him to remember it himself. Dugazon was amongst this number : one day that he was at St. Cloud, Bonaparte remarked that the embonpoint of that actor had increased considerably. "How<sup>3</sup> round you are getting,<sup>4</sup> Dugazon!" said he. "Not so much as you, my little man," replied the buffoon. *My little man* said nothing, but Dugazon was never again admitted to<sup>5</sup> his presence.

<sup>1</sup> For (referring to time) = *pendant*, when it means *during*; and *depuis*, when it means *since*. <sup>2</sup> *Many of them* is *beaucoup d'entre eux*, when subject of the verb, and simply *beaucoup*, with *en* before the verb, when object. Ex: *many of them forgot . . .* = *beaucoup d'entre eux oublièrent . . .*; *he forgot many of them* = *il en oublia beaucoup*. <sup>3</sup> See Ex. XXXV. Note <sup>10</sup>, Part I. <sup>4</sup> *To get* (to become) = *devenir*. <sup>5</sup> *En*.

## LVII.—THE DUC DE LAVAL.

The Duc de Laval, when he arrived in England, on<sup>1</sup> his emigration from France, called on<sup>2</sup> several of the nobility,<sup>3</sup> by whom he had been well received before the revolution. Almost all returned his visit; but amongst those who failed<sup>4</sup> to do so was the Duke of D——, who did not even take the trouble of writing to a man he supposed poor. Some time afterwards they met at Cholmondeley's. The master of the house asked M. de Laval to join a party at whist, with the Duke of D——. "Probably," observed his grace, "M. de Laval will not be inclined to do so, when<sup>5</sup> he is told we play<sup>6</sup> very

high."—"I beg your pardon," replied the Duc de Laval, "I play from one guinea to one hundred a point; and it is on<sup>7</sup> that account that I am surprised you have<sup>8</sup> not returned my visit."

<sup>1</sup> *Après avoir émigré.* <sup>2</sup> *To call on = faire une visite à, se présenter chez.* <sup>3</sup> *Several* cannot be translated before a collective. Turn, *several members of the nobility.* <sup>4</sup> *Who failed to do so = qui y manquèrent, qui ne le firent pas.* <sup>5</sup> See Ex. XXVI. Note <sup>14</sup>, Part I. <sup>6</sup> *To play very high = jouer très-gros jeu.* <sup>7</sup> Turn, on account of that. <sup>8</sup> See Rule, Ex. VII. Note <sup>4</sup>, Part I.

### LVIII.—AN ALIBI.

The usual defence of a thief, especially at the Old Bailey, is an *alibi*; to prove this by perjury is a common act of Newgate friendships; and there seldom is any difficulty<sup>1</sup> in procuring such witnesses. I remember a felon to have been proved to have been in Ireland at the time the robbery was sworn to have been done in London, and acquitted; but he had scarce gone from the bar when the witness was himself arrested for a robbery committed in London, at that<sup>2</sup> very time when he swore both he and his friend were at Dublin; for which robbery, I think, he was tried and executed.—H. FIELDING.

<sup>1</sup> *And there seldom is any difficulty in procuring such witnesses = il est rare qu'il soit difficile de se procurer de pareils témoins.* *Soit* is in the subjunctive mood after the verb *être* used impersonally. *Se procurer* = *to procure for one's self.* *De*, and not *des*, before the adjective, which precedes the noun taken in a partitive sense. <sup>2</sup> *At that very time when he swore = au moment même où il jurait.*

### LIX.—THE FORCE OF FASHION.

The most improper things we commit in the conduct of our lives, we<sup>1</sup> are led into by the force of fashion. Instances might be given, in which a prevailing custom



makes us act against the rules of nature, law, and common sense; but at present I shall confine my consideration of<sup>2</sup> the effect it has upon men's minds, by looking into our behaviour when it is the fashion to go<sup>3</sup> into mourning.

The custom of representing the grief we have for the loss of the dead by our habits, certainly had its rise<sup>4</sup> from the real sorrow of such<sup>5</sup> as were too much distressed to take the proper care they ought of their dress. By degrees it prevailed, that such<sup>5</sup> as had this inward oppression upon their minds, made an apology for<sup>6</sup> not joining with the rest of the world in their ordinary diversions, by a dress suited to their condition. This, therefore, was at first assumed by such<sup>5</sup> only as were under real distress: to whom it was a relief that they had nothing about them so<sup>7</sup> light and gay as to be irksome to the gloom and melancholy of their inward reflections, or that might misrepresent them to others. In process of time this laudable distinction of the sorrowful was lost, and mourning is now worn by heirs and widows. You see nothing but magnificence and solemnity in the equipage of the relict, and an air of release from servitude in the pomp of a son who has lost a wealthy father.

This fashion of sorrow is now become a generous part of the ceremonial between princes and sovereigns, who in the language of all nations are styled brothers to each other, and put on the purple upon<sup>8</sup> the death of any potentate with whom they live in amity.—STEELE, *The Spectator*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Begin the whole sentence thus :—*c'est la force de la mode qui.*  
<sup>2</sup> Sur. <sup>3</sup> To go into mourning = *prendre le deuil; se mettre en deuil.* <sup>4</sup> Had its rise = *provenait.* <sup>5</sup> Such as = *ceux qui.* <sup>6</sup> To make an apology for, to apologize for = *s'excuser de.* <sup>7</sup> So . . . as, enough . . . to = *assez . . . pour.*—*As . . . so = comme . . . de même.* <sup>8</sup> Upon the death = *à la mort.*

## LX.—PUBLIC OPINION.

It is an undertaking of some degree of delicacy to examine into<sup>1</sup> the cause of public disorders. If a man happens not to succeed in such an inquiry, he will be thought weak and visionary; if he touches the true grievance, there is a danger that he may come near to persons of weight and consequence, who will rather be exasperated at the discovery of their errors, than thankful<sup>2</sup> for the occasion<sup>3</sup> of correcting them. If he should<sup>4</sup> be obliged to blame the favourites of the people, he will be considered as the tool of power; if he censures those in power, he will be looked on as an instrument of faction. But in all exertions of duty something is<sup>5</sup> to be hazarded. When the affairs of the nation are distracted, private people are, by the spirit of that law, justified in stepping a little out<sup>6</sup> of their ordinary sphere. They may look into them narrowly;<sup>7</sup> they may reason upon them liberally: and if they should<sup>4</sup> be so<sup>8</sup> fortunate as to discover the true source of the mischief, and to suggest any probable method of removing it, though they may displease the rulers for the day, they are certainly of service to the cause of government. —BURKE.

<sup>1</sup> To examine into = examiner. <sup>2</sup> Thankful for = reconnaissant de. <sup>3</sup> L'occasion qu'on leur aura donnée. <sup>4</sup> Except in the present, always use the imperfect of the indicative after *if*. See Ex. XXVII. Note <sup>7</sup>, Part II. <sup>5</sup> Something is to be hazarded = on doit risquer quelque chose. <sup>6</sup> To step out = sortir. <sup>7</sup> Narrowly = attentivement, à fond, minutieusement. <sup>8</sup> See Ex. LIX. Note <sup>7</sup>, Part II.

## LXI.—THE SIEGE OF CADIZ.

In August, 1702, an armament, under the command of the Duke of Ormond, appeared off<sup>1</sup> Cadiz. The Spanish authorities had no funds and no regular troops. The national spirit, however, supplied,<sup>2</sup> in some degree,

what was wanting. The nobles and farmers advanced money. The peasantry<sup>3</sup> were formed into what the Spanish writers call bands of heroic patriots, and what General Stanhope calls "a rascally foot-militia." If the invaders had acted with vigour and judgment, Cadiz would probably have fallen. But the chiefs of the expedition were divided by national<sup>4</sup> and professional feelings, Dutch against English, land against sea. Sparre, the Dutch general, was sulky and perverse; Bellasys, the English general, embezzled the stores. Lord Mahon imputes the ill temper of Sparre to the influence of the republican institutions of Holland. By parity<sup>5</sup> of reason, we suppose that he would impute the peculations of Bellasys to the influence of the monarchical and aristocratical institutions of England. The Duke of Ormond, who had the command of the whole expedition, proved<sup>6</sup> on<sup>7</sup> this occasion, as on every other, destitute of the qualities which great emergencies require. No discipline was kept; the soldiers<sup>8</sup> were suffered to rob and insult those whom it was most desirable to conciliate. Churches were robbed; images were pulled down. The officers shared the spoil instead of punishing the spoilers; and at last the armament, loaded, to use<sup>9</sup> the words of Stanhope, "with a great deal of plunder and infamy," quitted the scene of Essex's glory, leaving the only Spaniard of note who had<sup>10</sup> declared<sup>11</sup> for them<sup>12</sup> to be hanged by his countrymen. — MACAULAY, *Historical Essays*.

<sup>1</sup> Off = à la hauteur de. <sup>2</sup> To supply = fournir. <sup>3</sup> To put the verb in the plural, the subject must be a noun in the plural, and not a collective in the singular. *The peasantry* = *les paysans*.  
<sup>4</sup> Turn, by feelings of nationality and profession. <sup>5</sup> By parity of reason = *en raisonnant de la même manière*. <sup>6</sup> To prove (neuter) = *se montrer*. <sup>7</sup> Dans. <sup>8</sup> Turn, one suffered that the soldiers, &c., and see Rule, Ex. VII. Note 4, Part I. <sup>9</sup> Pour employer. <sup>10</sup> See Rule, Ex. XXXVIII. Note 10, Part I. <sup>11</sup> To declare (neuter) = *se déclarer*. See Ex. IX. Note 11, Part I. <sup>12</sup> For them = *pour eux, en leur faveur*.

## LXII.—STRANGE EVIDENCE.

I remember, in one case where I was counsel,<sup>1</sup> for a long time the evidence did not appear to touch the prisoner<sup>2</sup> at all, and he looked about<sup>3</sup> him with the most perfect unconcern, seeming to think himself quite safe. At last the surgeon was called, who stated that the deceased had been killed by a shot, a gunshot<sup>4</sup> in the head; and he produced the matted hair and stuff taken<sup>5</sup> out of the wound. It was all hardened with blood. A basin of warm water was brought into court, and as<sup>6</sup> the blood was gradually softened, a piece of printed paper appeared, the wadding of the gun, which proved<sup>7</sup> to be the half<sup>8</sup> of a ballad. The other half had been found in the man's pocket when he was taken. He was hanged.—LORD ELTON.

<sup>1</sup> *I was counsel* = *je plaçais*. <sup>2</sup> *Prisoner* = *accusé*. <sup>3</sup> *About* = *autour de*. *About him* = *autour de lui* or *autour de soi*. *Soi* must always be used to avoid ambiguity. *Lui* might refer to another person spoken of in the sentence. For instance, in the sentence, *Henri dit à son père que désormais il travaillerait pour lui*, there is ambiguity; it means either, *Henry said to his father that he would henceforth work for him* (the father) or *for himself*. But if the sentence is *Henri . . . qu'il travaillera pour soi* (for himself), the ambiguity has disappeared. In the sentence to be translated above, *him* may be either *lui* or *soi*, because there is only one person spoken of in the sentence: there cannot be any ambiguity. <sup>4</sup> *Gunshot* = *coup de fusil*. Study the expressions: *coup de canon*, *coup de pistolet*, *coup d'épée*, *coup de sabre*, *coup de poing*, *coup de pied*, *coup de tête* (lit. and fig.), *coup de main* (lit. and fig.), *coup d'œil*, *coup de plume*, *coup de dent* . . . <sup>5</sup> *Que l'on avait extraits de la blessure*. <sup>6</sup> *As* = *à mesure que*, when an action is gradually going on. See Ex. XXII. Note 7, Part II. <sup>7</sup> *Which proved to be* = *qui se trouva être*. <sup>8</sup> *Half* (noun) = *moitié* (fem.); *half* (adj.) = *demi*.

LXIII.—DEEP<sup>1</sup> IN DEBT.

Palmer, the original<sup>2</sup> Joseph Surface, was at one time so oppressed with debt that he never left Drury

Lane Theatre, and lived altogether in his dressing-room.<sup>3</sup> Being later engaged at the Haymarket, he was conveyed there in a cartful<sup>4</sup> of scenery, concealed in a piece<sup>5</sup> of stage furniture.—*Routledge's Book of Theatrical Anecdotes.*

<sup>1</sup> *Criblé de dettes.* <sup>2</sup> *Premier.* <sup>3</sup> *Dressing-room* is generally *cabinet de toilette*; but, speaking of the boxes where actors dress, it is *loge*. <sup>4</sup> *Cartful of scenery* = *dans une charrette pleine de décors.* <sup>5</sup> *A piece of furniture* = *un meuble.* *A piece of news* = *une nouvelle.* *A piece of advice* = *un conseil.*

## PART III.

## I.—THE PHILOSOPHER.

As Rasselas was one day walking in the street, he saw a spacious building which<sup>1</sup> all were, by the open doors, invited to enter : he followed the stream of people, and found it a hall, or school of declamation, in which professors read lectures to their auditory.

He fixed his eye upon a sage raised above the rest, who<sup>2</sup> discoursed with great energy on the government of the passions. His look was venerable, his action graceful, his pronunciation clear, and his diction elegant. He showed, with great strength of sentiment and variety of illustration, that human nature is degraded and debased, when the lower faculties predominate over the higher, that when fancy, the parent of passion, usurps the dominion of the mind, nothing ensues but the natural effect of unlawful government, perturbation, and confusion ; that she betrays the fortresses of the intellect to rebels, and excites her children to sedition against reason, their lawful sovereign. He compared reason to the sun, of which the light is constant, uniform, and lasting ; and fancy to a meteor of bright but transitory lustre, irregular in its motion, and delusive in its direction.

He then communicated the various precepts given from time to time for the conquest of passions, and displayed the happiness of those who had obtained the important victory, after which, man is no longer<sup>3</sup> the

slave of fear, nor the fool<sup>4</sup> of hope; is no more emaciated by envy, inflamed by anger, emasculated by tenderness, nor depressed by grief: but walks on calmly through the tumults or privacies of life, as the sun pursues alike his course through the calm or the stormy sky.

He enumerated many examples of heroes immovable by pain or pleasure, who looked<sup>5</sup> with indifference on those modes or accidents, to which the vulgar give the names of good and evil. He exhorted his hearers to lay aside<sup>6</sup> their prejudices, and arm themselves against the shafts of malice or misfortune, by invulnerable patience; concluding, that this state only was happiness, and that this happiness was in every one's power.—JOHNSON.

<sup>1</sup> Turn, *into which*, because *to enter* is in French *entrer dans*, and prepositions must be immediately followed by their object. <sup>2</sup> See Rule, Ex. VII. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>3</sup> *No longer* = *ne . . . plus*. See Ex. LXXII. Note <sup>10</sup>, Part I. <sup>4</sup> *Jouet*. <sup>5</sup> *To look on* = *considérer*. <sup>6</sup> *To lay aside*. See Ex. II. Note <sup>15</sup>, Part II.

---

## II.—CHARLES DICKENS'S READINGS.

Dickens's habits as a speaker differed from those of most<sup>1</sup> orators. He gave no thought to the composition of the speech he was to make till the day before<sup>2</sup> he was to deliver it. No matter whether the effort was to be a long or short one, he never wrote down a word of what he was going to say; but when the proper time arrived for him to consider his subject, he took a walk into the country, and the thing was done. When he returned he was all ready for his task. He liked to talk about the audiences that came to hear him read, and he gave the palm to his Parisian one, saying it was the quickest to catch his meaning. Although he said many were always present in the room<sup>3</sup> in Paris who did not fully understand English, yet the French eye is so quick to detect expression that it never failed instantly to understand what he meant by a look or an act. "Thus,

for instance,"<sup>4</sup> he said, "when I was impersonating Steerforth in *David Copperfield*, and<sup>5</sup> gave that peculiar grip of the hand to Emily's lover, the French audience burst into cheers and rounds of applause." He said, with reference to the preparation of his readings, that it was three months' hard labour<sup>6</sup> to get up one of his own stories for public recitation, and he thought he had greatly improved his representation of the *Christmas Carol* while<sup>7</sup> in this country. He considered the storm scene in *David Copperfield* one of the most effective of his readings. The character of *Jack Hopkins* in *Bob Sawyer's Party* he took great delight in representing.—*Memoirs of Charles Dickens*, by J. T. FIELD, of Boston.

<sup>1</sup> Most orators = *la plupart des orateurs*. <sup>2</sup> The day before he was to = *la veille du jour où il devait*. <sup>3</sup> Room = *salle*. <sup>4</sup> For instance = *par exemple*. <sup>5</sup> See Ex. XVII. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part I. <sup>6</sup> Three months' hard labour = *trois mois de travaux forcés*. <sup>7</sup> Turn, while he was.

### III.—CIVITA VECCHIA.

Civita Vecchia is the finest nest of dirt and ignorance we have<sup>1</sup> found yet, except that African perdition they call Tangier, which is just like it. The people here live in alleys two yards wide, which have a smell about them which is peculiar but not entertaining. It is well the alleys are<sup>2</sup> not wider, because they hold as much smell now as a person can stand, and of course, if they were wider they would hold more,<sup>3</sup> and then the people would die. These alleys are paved with stone, and carpeted with diseased cats, and decayed rags, and decomposed vegetable-tops, and remnants of old boots, all soaked with dish-water,<sup>4</sup> and the people sit around on stools and enjoy it. They are indolent, as a general thing,<sup>5</sup> and yet have few pastimes. They work two or three hours at a time,<sup>6</sup> but not hard, and then they knock off and catch flies. This does not require any talent, because they only have to grab; if they do not get the one



they are after,<sup>7</sup> they get another.<sup>8</sup> It is all the same to them.<sup>9</sup> They have no partialities. Whichever they get is the one they want.

They have other kind of insects, but it does not make<sup>10</sup> them arrogant. They are very quiet, unpretending people. They have more of these things than other communities, but they do not boast of it.

These people are very uncleanly in face, in person, and dress. When they see anybody with clean linen on, it arouses their scorn. The women wash clothes at the public tanks in the streets; when their work is done, they sit in the alleys and nurse their babies. They nurse one at a time,<sup>6</sup> and the others scratch their backs<sup>11</sup> against the door-post and are happy.

All this country belongs to the Papal States. Their education is at a very low stage.

They keep up the passport system here, but so they do<sup>12</sup> in Turkey. This<sup>13</sup> shows that the Papal States are as far advanced as Turkey. This fact will be alone sufficient to silence<sup>14</sup> the tongues of malignant calumniators.—MARK TWAIN, *The Innocents Abroad*.

<sup>1</sup> See Rule, Ex. XXXVIII. Note <sup>10</sup>, Part I. <sup>2</sup> The subjunctive mood is used after an impersonal verb. <sup>3</sup> *They would hold more = elles en contiendraient davantage.* <sup>4</sup> *Dish-water = eau de vaisselle.* <sup>5</sup> *As a general thing = en général.* <sup>6</sup> *At a time = à la fois.* <sup>7</sup> *Turn, after which they are.* The preposition must always be followed immediately by its object. <sup>8</sup> *Another (of them).* <sup>9</sup> *It is all the same to them = cela leur est égal, indifférent.* <sup>10</sup> *When to make means to render, always translate it by rendre.* <sup>11</sup> See Rule, Ex. LXXVIII. Note <sup>7</sup>, Part I. <sup>12</sup> *C'est aussi ce que l'on fait en Turquie.* Note.—After *et, si, où, que*, the indefinite pronoun *on* is preceded by *l'*. *On*, which used to be *om*, and *hom*, comes from *homo*; it was a noun, and there is no wonder at an article having been chosen to precede it after certain words, for the sake of euphony. <sup>13</sup> See Ex. XXVII. Note <sup>2</sup>, Part II. <sup>14</sup> *To silence = imposer silence à, faire taire.*

#### IV.—CAMILLUS AND THE SCHOOLMASTER.

Camillus, in the expedition against the Falisci, after having routed<sup>1</sup> their army, besieged their capital city

Falerii, which threatened<sup>2</sup> a long and vigorous resistance.

The reduction of this little place became famous by a celebrated action of the Roman general, that has done him more credit with posterity, than all his other triumphs united.

A schoolmaster, who had the care of the children belonging to the principal men in<sup>3</sup> the city, having found means to decoy them into the Roman camp, offered to put them into the hands of Camillus, as the surest means of inducing the citizens to a speedy surrender. The general, struck with<sup>4</sup> the treachery of a wretch, whose duty was to protect innocence, and not to betray it, for some time regarded the traitor with a stern silence : but at last finding words : " Execrable villain," cried the noble Roman, " offer thy abominable proposals to creatures like thyself, and not to me : what ! though we be enemies of your city, are there not natural ties, that bind all mankind, which should never be broken ? There are duties required from us, in war, as well as in peace : we fight not against the age of innocence, but against men, men who have used<sup>5</sup> us ill indeed, but yet, whose crimes are virtues, when compared to thine. Against such base arts, my duty is to use only the Roman ones, valour and arms." So saying,<sup>6</sup> he ordered<sup>7</sup> him to be stripped, his hands to be tied behind him, and in that ignominious manner to be whipped into the town, by his own scholars. This generous behaviour in Camillus effected more<sup>8</sup> than his arms could do ;<sup>9</sup> the magistrates of the town submitted to the senate, leaving to Camillus the conditions of their surrender : who only fined<sup>10</sup> them in a sum of money to satisfy his army, and received them under the protection and into the alliance of Rome.—GOLDSMITH.

<sup>1</sup> *To rout = mettre en déroute.* <sup>2</sup> *To threaten a resistance = menacer de faire une résistance.* <sup>3</sup> See Ex. I. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part I. <sup>4</sup> *De*, not *par*, because the action expressed by the verb is one of the mind ; no bodily faculties participate in it. See Ex. XXIV. Note <sup>10</sup>, Part I. <sup>5</sup> *To ill use = maltraiter.* <sup>6</sup> The verb *dire* is active in French and must have a direct object. Say : *En disant cela, en*

*parlant ainsi.* See Ex. VI. Note <sup>11</sup>, Part II. *So saying can also* be translated by *sur ce* or *là-dessus* (thereupon). <sup>7</sup> See Rule, Ex. VII. Note <sup>4</sup>, Part I. <sup>8</sup> *Effected more = produisit plus d'effet.* <sup>9</sup> *Than his arms could do = que n'en firent ses armes.* See Rule, Ex. IV. Note <sup>13</sup>, Part II. <sup>10</sup> *To fine some one in a sum of money = condamner quelqu'un à payer une somme d'argent.*

---

## V.—PARIS AND ITS FATE.

Paris is to France, not merely its greatest city, the seat of its government, the centre of its society and literature. It is France itself; it is, as it has been<sup>1</sup> so long, its living heart and its surest bulwark. It is the city which has created the kingdom, and on the life of the city the life of the kingdom seems<sup>2</sup> to hang. What is to be its fate? Is some wholly different position in the face of France and of Europe to be the future doom of that memorable city? Men will look on its possible humiliation with very different eyes. Some may be disposed to take up the strain of the Hebrew prophet, and to say, "How hath the oppressor ceased, the golden city ceased!" Others will lament the home<sup>3</sup> of elegance and pleasure, and what calls itself civilisation.—E. A. FREEMAN, *Historical Essays*.

<sup>1</sup> *As it has been so long = comme cela existe depuis si longtemps.* The verb in this sentence is in the present of the indicative to express that the action is still going on. <sup>2</sup> *Seems to hang = semble dépendre.* The French say, *dépendre de*, not *dépendre sur*. <sup>3</sup> *Demeure, résidence, patrie.*

---

## VI.—NIGHT.

Night! the pulse of the great city lies still. The echo of hurrying feet has long since died away. Softly falls the moonlight on those quiet dwellings; yet, under those roofs are hearts that are throbbing<sup>1</sup> and breaking with misery too hopeless for tears; forms bent before

their time with crushing sorrow ; lips that never smile, save when some mocking dream comes to render the morrow's waking<sup>2</sup> tenfold more bitter. There, on a mother's faithful breast, calm and beautiful, lies the holy brow of infancy. Oh ! could<sup>3</sup> it but pass away thus, ere the bow of promise had ceased to span its future—ere that serenest sky be darkened with lowering clouds ! ere that loving heart shall feel the death-pang of despair !

There, too, sits Remorse, clothed in purple and fine linen, "the worm that never dieth" hid in its shining folds. There, the weary watcher by the couch of pain, the dull ticking of the clock striking to the heart a nameless terror. With straining eye its hours are counted, with nervous hand the draught that brings no healing is held to the pallid lip.

The measured tread of the watchman as he passes<sup>4</sup> his round, the distant rumble of the coach, perchance the disjointed fragment of a song from bacchanalian lips, alone breaks<sup>5</sup> the solemn stillness. At such an hour, serious thoughts, like unbidden guests, rush in. Life appears like the dream it is ; Eternity, its waking ; and involuntarily, the most careless eye looks up appealingly to Him by whom the hairs of our heads are all numbered.—FANNY FERN.

<sup>1</sup> *Are hearts that are throbbing and breaking with misery too hopeless for tears = il y a des cœurs qui palpitent et qui sont brisés par des malheurs si grands qu'ils ne sont plus capables de faire couler les larmes.* <sup>2</sup> *Waking (noun) = réveil.* <sup>3</sup> *Could it but pass away thus = plutôt à Dieu qu'elle pût ainsi s'écouler, se passer.* <sup>4</sup> *To pass one's round = faire sa ronde.* <sup>5</sup> *Romppe.*

## VII.—FERDINAND AND ISABELLA.

Ferdinand's connection with Isabella, while it reflected infinite glory on his reign, suggests a contrast most<sup>1</sup> unfavourable to his character. Hers was all magnanimity, disinterestedness, and deep devotion<sup>2</sup> to the

interests of her people. His was the spirit of egotism. The circle of his views might be more or less expanded, but self was the steady, unchangeable centre. Her heart beat with the generous sympathies of friendship. Ferdinand proved<sup>3</sup> himself unworthy of the admirable woman with whom his destinies were united. Ferdinand, in fine, a shrewd and politic prince, "surpassing," as a French writer,<sup>4</sup> not his friend, has remarked, "all the statesmen of his time in the science of the cabinet," may be taken as the representative of the peculiar genius of the age.<sup>5</sup> While Isabella, discarding all the petty artifices of state policy, and pursuing the noblest ends by the noblest means, stands far above her age.<sup>5</sup>—PRESCOTT.

<sup>1</sup> Most unfavourable = *des plus défavorables*. <sup>2</sup> Devotion = *dévouement*, and *devotion*, religiously speaking. <sup>3</sup> To prove (neuter), to prove one's self = *se montrer*. <sup>4</sup> Turn, a French writer who was not his friend. <sup>5</sup> *Siècle*.

---

#### VIII.—SPEECH OF THE FRENCH AMBASSADOR TO QUEEN ELIZABETH IN DEFENCE OF MARY STUART.

"I tell you, Madam, that instead of arresting the invasion with which this realm is menaced, you will only<sup>1</sup> precipitate it. Hitherto the Queen of Scots has been the target which has caught the arrows that have been aimed at your person. She is a stone that you hold in your hand. Fling it at your enemy and it is gone; you can threaten with it no more. Kill her as some advise you, and her death will arm your adversaries with despair, and will give them a more plausible ground<sup>2</sup> on which to assail you. Your majesty' is a wise and prudent princess; we in France have observed you closely for<sup>3</sup> these nineteen years; you have used the pretensions of the Queen of Scots to succeed you on the throne of these realms, as your strongest protection, and it is a maxim among us that those who

change the base of their policy are on the way towards a fall. The Spanish minister in Paris says openly that it will be to his master's advantage if the Queen of Scots is destroyed, being assured that the English Catholics will then give him their undivided allegiance. Your majesty has reigned long and happily, because so far<sup>4</sup> you have preferred moderation to violence. Honour<sup>5</sup> points clearly towards clemency. Interest is at least equally balanced. Think of the judgment of posterity, and of the name which you will leave behind you. Spare this lady, and you will lay my master under an eternal obligation, and you will earn immortal renown for yourself."—FROUDE.

<sup>1</sup> *You will only* = *vous ne ferez que*. <sup>2</sup> *A more plausible ground on which* = *une raison, un motif plus plausible pour*. <sup>3</sup> *For these nineteen years* = *depuis dix-neuf ans*. The verb of the sentence must be written in the present of the indicative, because the action of *observing* was still going on, at the time he spoke. <sup>4</sup> *So far* = *jusqu'ici*. <sup>5</sup> *Honour points clearly towards clemency* = *l'honneur vous indique clairement d'user de clémence*.

---

## IX.—HENRY THE EIGHTH DISENGAGED.

After Jane Seymour's death, both Charles and Francis affected an anxiety to secure<sup>1</sup> the vacant hand of Henry. The imperial candidate was the Duchess of Milan. Among the many<sup>2</sup> ladies at the French court whose names were mentioned to him, Henry's fancy inclined to the only one whom he could not obtain, the Duchesse de Longueville. The Duchesse de Longueville, or Mary of Guise, had engaged herself to James of Scotland. M. de Chastillon, the ambassador in England, was occupied in endeavouring to persuade the king to content himself with one of her sisters, or with a daughter of the House of Lorraine or of Vendosme. The king, who had seen the Duchesse de Longueville, would have accepted her on<sup>3</sup> the spot. Chastillon's correspondence relates his efforts, at once<sup>4</sup> fruitless and grotesque, to

induce Henry to select either of the others. The king said he would not choose a wife in the dark, or act in such a business on another man's judgment. The young ladies must be sent to Calais, and he would go over and see them.

The French<sup>5</sup> court were anxious to keep him from the Duchess of Milan; and yet they could not consent to trot out<sup>6</sup> their princesses, as Montmorency said, like horses at a fair. If the king chose none,<sup>7</sup> they would be all made<sup>8</sup> ridiculous; and whether<sup>9</sup> he made a choice or not, to send them to Calais on such an errand was disrespectful and discourteous.—FROUDE, *Note on the "Pilgrim,"* by William Thomas, Clerk to the Council to Edward VI.

<sup>1</sup> To secure = *s'assurer de*. <sup>2</sup> *Nombreux*. <sup>3</sup> On the spot = *sur-le-champ*. <sup>4</sup> At once, meaning at a time, at the same time = *à la fois*; when it means immediately, it is *à l'instant*. <sup>5</sup> Turn, one was anxious at the French court. <sup>6</sup> To trot out = *faire trotter*. *Faire* is often used to make a neuter verb active. Ex.: To boil potatoes = *faire bouillir des pommes de terre*. <sup>7</sup> Turn, if he did not choose any (aucun) of them. <sup>8</sup> To make is *rendre* when meaning to render. <sup>9</sup> Write *que* for *si*, and see the exception to the rule Ex. XVII. Note <sup>5</sup>, Part I.

## X.—THE PHILOSOPHER. (*Ex. I. Part III.*)

Rasselas, who could not conceive how any man could reason so forcibly, without feeling the cogency of his own arguments, paid<sup>1</sup> his visit in a few days, and was denied admission. He had now<sup>2</sup> learned the power of money, and made his way by a piece of gold to the inner apartment, where he found the philosopher in a room darkened, with<sup>3</sup> his eyes misty and his face pale.

"Sir," said he, "you are come at a time when all human friendship is useless; what I suffer cannot be remedied, what I have lost cannot be supplied. My daughter, from whose<sup>4</sup> tenderness I expected all the comforts<sup>5</sup> of my age,<sup>6</sup> died last night of a fever. My views, my purposes, my hopes, are at an end; I am now a lonely being disunited from society."

"Sir," said the prince, "mortality is an event, by which a wise man can never be surprised; we know that death is always near;<sup>7</sup> and it should, therefore, always be expected."—"Young man," answered the philosopher, "you speak like one<sup>8</sup> that has never felt the pangs of separation."—"Have you then forgot the precepts," said Rasselas, "which you so powerfully enforced?"<sup>9</sup> Has wisdom no strength to arm the heart against calamity? Consider, that external things are naturally variable, truth and reason are always the same."—"What comfort," said the mourner, "can truth and reason afford me? of what effect are they now, but to tell me, that my daughter will not be restored?"

The prince, whose humanity would not suffer him to insult misery with reproof, went away, convinced of the emptiness of rhetorical sound, and the inefficacy of polished periods and studied sentences.—JOHNSON.

<sup>1</sup> To pay a visit = *faire une visite*. <sup>2</sup> Now (time past) = *alors*.  
<sup>3</sup> See Ex. XXIX. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>4</sup> Turn, from the tenderness of whom. <sup>5</sup> Comfort = *consolation*. <sup>6</sup> Age = *vieillesse*. <sup>7</sup> Near (adjective) = *proche*. <sup>8</sup> Like one = *comme un homme*. <sup>9</sup> Which you so powerfully enforced = *que vous avez démontrés avec tant de force*.

## XI.—WHAT GOVERNMENTAL MEN SHOULD BE.

Every good political institution must have a preventive operation as well as a remedial. It ought to have a natural tendency to exclude bad men from government, and not to trust for the safety of the state to subsequent punishment<sup>1</sup> alone; punishment, which has ever been tardy and uncertain; and which, when power is suffered in bad hands, may chance<sup>2</sup> to fall rather on the injured than the criminal.

Before<sup>3</sup> men are put forward into the great trusts of the State, they ought<sup>4</sup> by their conduct to have obtained such a degree of estimation in their country, as may be some sort of pledge and security to the public, that they will not abuse those trusts. It is no mean security



for<sup>5</sup> a proper use of power, that a man has shown by the general tenor of his actions, that the affection, the good opinion, the confidence, of his fellow-citizens have been among the principal objects of his life; and that he has owed none of the gradations of his power or fortune to a settled contempt, or occasional forfeiture of their esteem.

That man who before he comes into power is obliged to desert his friends, or who losing it has no friends to sympathize with him; he who has no sway among any part of the landed or commercial interest, but whose whole importance has begun with his office, and is sure to end with it,<sup>6</sup> is a person who ought never to be suffered by a controlling Parliament to continue in any of those situations which confer the lead and direction of all our public affairs; because such a man has<sup>7</sup> no connection with the interest of the people.

Those knots or cabals of men who have got together, avowedly without any public principle, in order to sell their conjunct iniquity at the higher rate, and are therefore universally odious, ought never to be suffered to domineer in the State; because they have no connection with the sentiments and opinions of the people.  
—BURKE.

<sup>1</sup> *Châtiment.* <sup>2</sup> *And which . . . . may chance to fall = et il peut se faire qu'il tombe.* <sup>3</sup> *Before men . . . . trusts of the state = avant de mettre en avant des hommes à qui l'on doit confier les rênes de l'Etat.* <sup>4</sup> *They ought by their conduct to have obtained = on devrait voir, si, par leur conduite, ils ont gagné.* In the sentences <sup>3</sup> and <sup>4</sup>, the passive form is avoided; and in the sentence <sup>3</sup>, the infinitive is used *avant de mettre*, and not the subjunctive, *avant qu'on mit*, because the verbs in both sentences, <sup>3</sup> and <sup>4</sup>, subordinate and principal, are written in the same person. See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>, and Ex. XXVII. Note <sup>11</sup>, Part I. <sup>5</sup> *It is no mean security for a proper use of power = c'est une garantie importante que le pouvoir sera entre bonnes mains.* <sup>6</sup> Personal pronouns referring to things cannot be used after prepositions. The sentence, in order to avoid *with it*, may be turned into *whose whole importance has begun, and is sure to end, with his office.* <sup>7</sup> *Because such a man has . . . . interest of the people = car un pareil homme n'a rien de commun avec le peuple, au point de vue des intérêts, or quant aux intérêts.* See Ex. LIX. Note <sup>2</sup>, Part I.

## XII.—LUXURY.

Luxury is a word of uncertain signification, and may be taken in a good<sup>1</sup> as well as in a bad sense. In general, it means great refinement in the gratification of the senses; and any<sup>2</sup> degree of it may be innocent or blamable, according to the age, or country, or condition of the person. The bounds between the virtue and the vice cannot here be exactly fixed, more<sup>3</sup> than in other moral subjects. To imagine, that the gratifying of any sense, or the indulging of any delicacy in meat, drink, or apparel, is of<sup>4</sup> itself a vice, can never enter into a head that is not disordered by the frenzies of enthusiasm. I have, indeed, heard of a monk abroad, who, because the windows of his cell opened<sup>5</sup> upon a noble prospect, made a *covenant with his eyes* never to turn that way,<sup>6</sup> or<sup>7</sup> receive so sensual a gratification. And such is the crime of drinking champagne or Burgundy, preferable<sup>8</sup> to small beer or porter. These indulgences are only vices, when they are pursued at the expense<sup>9</sup> of some virtue, as liberality or charity; in like manner as<sup>10</sup> they are follies, when for them a man ruins<sup>11</sup> his fortune, and reduces himself to want and beggary. Where they entrench<sup>12</sup> upon no virtue, but leave ample subject whence to provide for friends, family, and every proper object of generosity or compassion, they are entirely innocent, and have in every age<sup>13</sup> been acknowledged<sup>14</sup> such by almost all moralists. To be entirely occupied with<sup>15</sup> the luxury of the table, for instance, without any relish for the pleasures of ambition, study, or conversation, is a mark of stupidity, and is incompatible with any vigour of temper or genius. To confine one's expense entirely to such a gratification, without regard to friends or family, is an indication of a heart destitute of humanity or benevolence. But if a man reserve time sufficient<sup>16</sup> for all laudable pursuits, and money sufficient for all generous purposes, he is free<sup>17</sup> from every shadow of blame or reproach.—D. HUME.

<sup>1</sup> In a good, bad sense = *en bonne, mauvaise part*. <sup>2</sup> Any degree of it = *n'importe quelle quantité*. <sup>3</sup> Turn, cannot here be fixed more exactly than. <sup>4</sup> Of itself = *en soi*. <sup>5</sup> Opened upon a noble prospect = *s'ouvraient devant un panorama magnifique*. To open (active) = *ouvrir*, to open (neuter) = *s'ouvrir*. It is the same with many verbs. Note.—When active verbs are used as neuter verbs in English, they often become reflexive in French. Ex.: *tourner, préparer, déclarer, rencontrer, &c.* <sup>6</sup> That way = *de ce côté-là, dans cette direction-là*. That way is translated by *par là*, and this way by *par ici*, when the way is indicated with the finger, or any other sign. <sup>7</sup> Turn, and never to receive. <sup>8</sup> Preferable = *de préférence*, when used for the adverb *preferably*. <sup>9</sup> Dépens (in the plural). <sup>10</sup> In like manner as = *de même que*.—They are follics. See Ex. XIII. Note <sup>14</sup>, Part I. <sup>11</sup> Ruins his fortune = *se ruine*. <sup>12</sup> Em-pièter (to encroach). <sup>13</sup> In every age = *de tous temps*. <sup>14</sup> To acknowledge = *reconnaître comme*. <sup>15</sup> See Ex. XII. Note <sup>9</sup>, Part I. <sup>16</sup> Time sufficient, money sufficient. Turn, enough time, enough money. <sup>17</sup> He is free from . . . = *Personne ne peut le blâmer ou lui reprocher quoi que ce soit*.

### XIII.—ELEPHANT HUNTING.<sup>1</sup>

On the following day, when my men were cutting<sup>2</sup> up the elephant, great numbers of the villagers came to enjoy the feast. We were on the side of a fine green valley, studded here<sup>3</sup> and there with trees, and cut by numerous rivulets. I had<sup>4</sup> retired from the noise, to take an observation among some rocks of laminated grit,<sup>5</sup> when I beheld an elephant and her calf<sup>6</sup> at the end of the valley, about<sup>7</sup> two miles distant. The calf was rolling<sup>8</sup> in the mud, and the dam was standing fanning herself with her great ears. As I looked at them through my glass, I saw a long string of my own men appearing on the other side of them, and Sekwebu came and told me that these had<sup>9</sup> gone off, saying, "Our father will see to-day what sort of men he has got." I then went higher up the side of the valley, in order to have a distinct view of their mode of hunting. The goodly beast, totally<sup>10</sup> unconscious of the approach of an enemy, stood for some time suckling her young<sup>11</sup> one, which<sup>12</sup> seemed about two years old; they then went into a pit containing mud, and smeared themselves

all over<sup>13</sup> with<sup>14</sup> it, the little one frisking about his dam, flapping his ears and tossing his trunk incessantly, in<sup>15</sup> elephantine fashion. She kept<sup>16</sup> flapping her ears and wagging her tail, as if<sup>17</sup> in the height of enjoyment. Then began the piping of their enemies, which was performed by<sup>18</sup> blowing into a tube, or the hands closed together, as boys do into a key. They call out to attract the animal's attention :—

"O chief! chief! we have come to kill you,  
O chief! chief! many more will die besides you,  
The gods have said it," &c.

Both animals expanded their ears and listened, then left their bath as the crowd rushed towards them. The little one ran forward towards the end of the valley, but, seeing the men there, returned to his dam. She placed herself on the danger<sup>19</sup> side of her calf, and passed her proboscis over it again<sup>20</sup> and again, as if to<sup>21</sup> assure it of safety. She frequently looked back to the men, who<sup>22</sup> kept up an incessant shouting, singing, and piping; then looked at her young one and ran after it, sometimes sideways, as if her feelings were divided between anxiety to protect her offspring, and desire to revenge the temerity of her persecutors.—LIVINGSTONE'S *Africa*.

<sup>1</sup> *Chasse à l'éléphant.* <sup>2</sup> *To cut up = dépecer.* <sup>3</sup> *Studded here and there with trees = parsemé d'arbres ça et là.* *D'arbres* has only one sounded syllable, for *bres* is silent; therefore I placed *ça et là*, which has three sounded syllables, after *d'arbres*. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. IX. Note <sup>11</sup>, Part I. and Ex. XII. Note <sup>5</sup>, Part III. <sup>5</sup> *Grès.* <sup>6</sup> *Petit (masc.)* <sup>7</sup> *About two miles distant = à une distance d'environ deux milles.* Translate, *two feet high; three yards wide, &c.* <sup>8</sup> See Ex. XII. Note <sup>5</sup>, Part III. <sup>9</sup> *Had gone off, saying = étaient partis en disant.* See Ex. VI. Note <sup>11</sup>, Part II. <sup>10</sup> *Totally unconscious of = qui ignorait entièrement.* <sup>11</sup> *Petit.* See Ex. XXXII. Note <sup>4</sup>, Part II. <sup>12</sup> *Which seemed about two years old = qui paraissait avoir environ deux ans.* <sup>13</sup> *All over = entièrement.* <sup>14</sup> Turn, of it. <sup>15</sup> *In elephantine fashion = à la façon des éléphants.* <sup>16</sup> *Kept flapping her ears = continuait à battre des oreilles.* <sup>17</sup> *As if in the height of enjoyment = comme si elle était au comble de la joie.* (*Comble = climax*). <sup>18</sup> See Ex. VII. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>19</sup> *On the danger side of her calf = du côté du danger pour en protéger son*

*petit.* <sup>20</sup> *Again and again = constamment.* <sup>21</sup> *As if to = comme pour.* <sup>22</sup> *Who kept up incessant = qui ne cessaient de*, followed by the infinitive of the verbs *to shout, to sing, to pipe = crier, chanter, siffler.*

#### XIV.—ELEPHANT HUNTING (*End*).

The men kept<sup>1</sup> about a hundred yards<sup>2</sup> in her rear, and some that distance from her flanks, and continued thus until she was obliged to cross a rivulet. The time spent<sup>3</sup> in descending and getting up the opposite bank allowed<sup>4</sup> of their coming up to the edge, and discharging their spears at about<sup>5</sup> twenty yards' distance. After the first discharge, she appeared with<sup>6</sup> her sides red with<sup>7</sup> blood, and, beginning to flee for<sup>8</sup> her own life, seemed to think no more of her young. I had previously sent off Sekwebu with orders to spare the calf. It ran very fast, but neither<sup>9</sup> young nor old ever enter into a gallop; their quickest pace is only a sharp walk. Before Sekwebu could reach them, the calf had taken<sup>10</sup> refuge in the water, and was killed. The pace of the dam gradually became slower. She turned<sup>11</sup> with a shriek of rage, and made a furious charge back among the men. They vanished at right angles to her course, or sideways, and, as she ran straight on, she went through the whole party, but came near no one, except a man who wore a piece of cloth on his shoulders. Bright clothing is always dangerous in these cases. She charged three or four times, and, except in the first instance, never went farther than<sup>12</sup> one hundred yards. She often stood, after<sup>13</sup> she had crossed a rivulet, and faced<sup>14</sup> the men, though she received fresh<sup>15</sup> spears. It was by this process of spearing and loss of blood that she was killed, for at last, making a short charge, she staggered<sup>16</sup> round and sank<sup>17</sup> down dead in a kneeling posture.

<sup>1</sup> *Kept, stood = se tenaient.* <sup>2</sup> See Ex. XIII. Note 7, Part III.

<sup>3</sup> *Spent in = dépensé à.* <sup>4</sup> *Allowed of their coming up = leur permit d'arriver*; the following verb discharging will of course be in the infinitive preceded by *de*, under the government of *permettre*.

<sup>5</sup> See Ex. XIII. Note <sup>7</sup>, Part III. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. XXIX. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I.  
<sup>7</sup> See Ex. XII. Note <sup>9</sup>, Part I. <sup>8</sup> *To flee for one's own life* = *chercher son salut dans la fuite*. <sup>9</sup> *Neither . . . into a gallop* = *ni les jeunes ni les vieux ne se mettent jamais à galoper*. <sup>10</sup> *To take refuge* = *se réfugier*. <sup>11</sup> See Ex. XII. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part III. <sup>12</sup> See Ex. X. Note <sup>4</sup>, Part I. <sup>13</sup> *After she had crossed* = *après avoir traversé*. See Ex. XXVII. Note <sup>11</sup>, Part I. <sup>14</sup> *To face* = *faire face à, présenter le front à*. <sup>15</sup> *Nouveau*. Remember that the partitive article is always *de* before an adjective, whether the noun be masculine or feminine, singular or plural. <sup>16</sup> *To stagger round* = *chanceler*. <sup>17</sup> *Sank down in a kneeling posture* = *omba morte sur ses genoux*.

## XV.—HALLAM.

History, at least in its state of ideal perfection, is a compound of poetry and philosophy.

It is remarkable that the practice of separating the two ingredients of which history is composed has<sup>1</sup> become prevalent on the Continent as well as in this country. Italy has already produced a historical novel, of high merit and of still higher promise. In France, the practice<sup>2</sup> has been carried to a length somewhat whimsical. M. Sismondi publishes a grave and stately history of the Merovingian kings, very valuable, and a little tedious. He then sends forth as<sup>3</sup> a companion to it a novel, in which he attempts to give a lively representation of characters and manners. This course, as it seems to us, has all the disadvantages of a division of labour, and none of its advantages. We understand the expediency of keeping the functions of cook and coachman distinct. The dinner will be better dressed, and the horses better managed. But when the two situations are united, as in the *Maître Jacques* of Molière, we do not see that the matter is<sup>4</sup> much mended by the solemn form with which the pluralist passes from one of his employments to the other.

We manage<sup>5</sup> those things better in England. Sir Walter Scott gives us a novel; Mr. Hallam a critical and argumentative history. Both are occupied<sup>6</sup> with the same matter. But the former looks at it with the eye

of a sculptor. His intention is to give an expression and lively image of its external form. The latter is an anatomist. His task is to dissect the subject to<sup>7</sup> its inmost recesses, and to lay<sup>8</sup> bare before us all the springs of motion and all the causes of decay.

Mr. Hallam is, on<sup>9</sup> the whole, far better qualified than any other writer of our time for the office which he has undertaken. He has great industry and great acuteness. His knowledge is extensive, various, and profound. His mind is equally distinguished by the amplitude<sup>10</sup> of its grasp, and by the delicacy of his tact. His speculations have none of that vagueness which is the common fault of political philosophy. On<sup>11</sup> the contrary, they are strikingly practical, and teach us not only the general rule, but the mode of applying it to solve particular cases.—MACAULAY'S *Essays*.

<sup>1</sup> Impersonal verbs or verbs used impersonally require the subjunctive mood. <sup>2</sup> *En France, on a mis cela en pratique sur une échelle quelque peu fantaisie.* <sup>3</sup> *As a companion to it = pour l'accompagner.* <sup>4</sup> Verbs depending on a negative or an interrogative must be written in the subjunctive mood. <sup>5</sup> *Nous faisons mieux que cela en Angleterre.* <sup>6</sup> *To be occupied with = s'occuper de.* <sup>7</sup> *To its inmost recesses = jusqu'à ce qu'il en ait découvert les mystères les plus secrets.* <sup>8</sup> *To lay bare = mettre à nu.* <sup>9</sup> *On the whole = en somme, en résumé.* <sup>10</sup> *The amplitude of its grasp = l'étendue qu'il peut embrasser.* <sup>11</sup> *On the contrary = au contraire.*

## XVI.—THE GIANT AND THE DWARF.

Once upon a time,<sup>1</sup> a giant and a dwarf were friends, and kept<sup>2</sup> together. They made a bargain, that<sup>3</sup> they would never forsake each other, but go and seek adventures.

The first battle<sup>4</sup> they fought was with two Saracens, and the dwarf, who was very courageous, dealt one of the champions a most angry<sup>5</sup> blow. It did the Saracen but very little injury, who,<sup>6</sup> lifting up his sword, fairly struck off the poor dwarf's<sup>7</sup> arm. He was now in a woful plight, but the giant coming to his assistance, in

a short time, left the two Saracens dead on the plain, and the dwarf cut off the dead man's<sup>7</sup> head out of spite.

They then travelled on to<sup>8</sup> another adventure. This was against three bloody-minded satyrs, who were carrying away a young lady in distress.<sup>9</sup> The dwarf was not quite so fierce as before,<sup>10</sup> but for all that, struck the first blow, which was returned by another that knocked<sup>11</sup> out his<sup>12</sup> eye; but the giant was soon up<sup>13</sup> with them, and had they not fled, would have certainly killed them every one. They were all very joyful at this victory, and the lady, who had been relieved, fell in love with<sup>14</sup> the giant and married him.

They now travelled far, and farther than I<sup>15</sup> can tell, till they met with a company of robbers. The giant, for the first time, was foremost<sup>16</sup> now; but the dwarf was not far behind. The battle was stout<sup>17</sup> and long. Wherever the giant came, all fell before him; but the dwarf had<sup>18</sup> like to have been killed, more than<sup>19</sup> once. At last the victory declared for the two adventurers; but the dwarf lost his<sup>20</sup> leg. The dwarf had now lost an arm, an eye, and a leg, while the giant, who was without a single wound, cried out to his little companion: "My little hero, this a glorious sport, let us get<sup>21</sup> one victory more, and then we shall have honour for ever."

"No," cried the dwarf, who was by this time grown wiser, "no, I declare off,<sup>22</sup> I'll fight no more; for I find in every battle that you get<sup>23</sup> all the honours and rewards, but all the blows fall upon me."—GOLDSMITH.

<sup>1</sup> Once upon a time = *une fois*. Fairy tales generally begin in French thus: *il était une fois*. <sup>2</sup> To keep together = *être des amis inséparables*. <sup>3</sup> Turn, never to forsake each other. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. LXXVII. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part I. <sup>5</sup> Furieux. <sup>6</sup> Turn, it did very little injury to the Saracen, who. See Rule, Ex. VII. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>7</sup> See Ex. LXXVIII. Note <sup>7</sup>, Part I. <sup>8</sup> To another adventure = *à la recherche d'une autre aventure*. <sup>9</sup> In distress = *réduite au désespoir*. <sup>10</sup> See Ex. XIX. Note <sup>9</sup>, Part I. <sup>11</sup> To knock out = *faire sauter*. <sup>12</sup> See Ex. LXXVIII. Note <sup>7</sup>, Part I. <sup>13</sup> Up with them = *auprès d'eux*. <sup>14</sup> To fall in love with = *devenir amoureux de*. <sup>15</sup> See Ex. IV. Note and Rule <sup>13</sup>, Part II. <sup>16</sup> Foremost = *le plus en avant*. <sup>17</sup> Opinionaire. <sup>18</sup> Had like to have been killed = *mangua*



*d'être tué.* <sup>19</sup> See Ex. X. Note <sup>4</sup>, Part I. <sup>20</sup> *Lost his leg = perdit la jambe.* The sentence is not *se perdit la jambe*, as might be concluded from Ex. LXXVIII. Note <sup>7</sup>, Part I. The case is not the same: the possessor of the leg is known here; *the possessor* is the subject of the sentence: *the dwarf lost his leg.* There is no misunderstanding possible as to the possessor of the leg: *the dwarf* could not lose anybody else's leg. But if I wanted to translate, *the dwarf cut off his leg*, I should say *le nain se coupa la jambe.* In saying *le nain coupa la jambe*, I should not express whose leg he cut off. <sup>21</sup> See Ex. LXXVII. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part I. <sup>22</sup> *I declare off = je me retire, j'en ai assez.* <sup>23</sup> *Gagner.*

---

## XVII.—CREDULITY.

A Chaldean peasant was conducting a goat to the city of Bagdad. He was mounted on an ass, and the goat followed him, with<sup>1</sup> a bell suspended to his neck. "I shall sell these two animals," said he to himself, "for thirty pieces of silver; and with the money I can<sup>2</sup> purchase a new turban, and a rich vestment of taffety, which I will tie with<sup>3</sup> a sash of purple silk. The young damsels will then smile more favourably upon me; and I shall be the finest man at the mosque." Whilst the peasant was thus anticipating in idea his future enjoyments, three artful rogues concerted a stratagem to plunder him of his present treasures.

As he moved<sup>4</sup> slowly along, one of them slipped off<sup>5</sup> the bell from the goat's neck, and fastening it, without being perceived, to the tail of the ass, carried away his booty.

The man riding upon the ass, and hearing the sound of the bell, continued to muse, without<sup>6</sup> the least suspicion of the loss he had sustained. Happening, however, a short while afterwards, to turn about his<sup>7</sup> head, he discovered, with grief and astonishment, that the animal was gone, which<sup>8</sup> constituted so considerable a part of his riches; and he inquired,<sup>9</sup> with the utmost anxiety, after his goat, of every traveller whom he met<sup>10</sup> with on the road.

The second rogue now accosted him, and said: "I have<sup>11</sup> just seen in yonder fields a man in great haste, dragging along with him a goat." The peasant dismounted with great precipitation, and requested the obliging stranger to hold his ass, that<sup>12</sup> he might lose no time in overtaking the thief.

He instantly began the pursuit, and having traversed in vain that course<sup>13</sup> that was pointed out to him, he came back, fatigued and breathless, to the place from whence he had set out: where he neither found his ass, nor the deceitful informer to whose care he had intrusted him.

As he walked pensively onwards, overwhelmed<sup>14</sup> with shame, vexation, and disappointment, his attention was roused by the loud complaints and lamentations of a poor man who was sitting by<sup>15</sup> the side of a well. He turned out of his way to sympathize with a brother in affliction, recounted his own misfortunes, and inquired the cause of that violent sorrow which seemed to oppress him.

"Alas!" said the poor man, in<sup>16</sup> the most piteous tone of voice, "as I was resting here to drink, I dropped into the water a casket full of diamonds, which I was employed to carry to the Caliph of Bagdat, and I shall be put to death on the suspicion of having secreted<sup>17</sup> so valuable a treasure."—"Why do you not jump into the well in search of the casket?" cried the peasant, astonished at the stupidity of his new acquaintance.—"Because it is deep," replied the man, "and I<sup>18</sup> can neither dive nor swim; but if you will<sup>19</sup> undertake this kind office for me, I will reward you with thirty pieces of silver."

The peasant accepted the offer with exultation, and whilst he was putting off his cassock, vest, and slippers, expressed his gratitude to the holy prophet for his providential succour. But the moment he plunged into the water in search of the pretended casket, the man, who was one of the three rogues that had concerted the plan of robbing him, seized<sup>20</sup> upon his garments, and bore<sup>21</sup> them off in security to his comrades.

Thus, through inattention, simplicity, and credulity, was the unfortunate Chaldean duped of all his little possessions.—PERCIVAL.

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. XXIX. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>2</sup> Use the future of *pouvoir*, because a future action is implied. <sup>3</sup> *Avec*. It means *with the help of, by means of*. See Ex. XII. Note <sup>2</sup>, Part I. <sup>4</sup> *As he moved slowly along* = *comme il s'en allait lentement le long du chemin*. <sup>5</sup> *To slip off* = *détacher*. <sup>6</sup> *Turn, without having*. <sup>7</sup> See Ex. XVI. Note <sup>20</sup>, Part III. <sup>8</sup> See Ex. VII. Note <sup>2</sup>, Part I. <sup>9</sup> *To inquire after* = *prendre des informations sur, s'enquérir de*. <sup>10</sup> *To meet, to meet with* (by chance) = *rencontrer*. <sup>11</sup> *To have just* = *venir de*. <sup>12</sup> *In order that*. <sup>13</sup> *Course* = *route*. <sup>14</sup> *Overwhelmed with* = *accablé de*. <sup>15</sup> *By the side of a well* = *près d'un puits*. <sup>16</sup> *De*. <sup>17</sup> *Secreted* = *caché*. <sup>18</sup> See Ex. XVII. Note <sup>5</sup>, Part I. <sup>19</sup> The verb *vouloir* should be used. <sup>20</sup> *To seize upon* = *s'emparer de*. <sup>21</sup> *Bore them off* = *les emporta*.

## XVIII.—ELIZABETH.

Elizabeth, in<sup>1</sup> her person, was masculine, tall, straight, and strong-limbed,<sup>2</sup> with<sup>3</sup> high round forehead, brown eyes, fair complexion, fine white teeth, and yellow hair; she danced with great agility, her voice was strong and shrill; she understood music, and played upon<sup>4</sup> several instruments. She possessed an excellent memory, and\* understood the dead and living languages,<sup>5</sup> and\* made good proficiency in the sciences, and was well read<sup>6</sup> in history. Her conversation was sprightly and agreeable, her judgment solid, her apprehension acute, her application indefatigable, and her courage invincible. She was the great bulwark of the Protestant religion; she was highly commendable for her general regard to the impartial administration of justice; and even for her rigid economy, which saved<sup>7</sup> the public money, and evinced that love for her people, which<sup>8</sup> she so warmly professed.

Yet, she deviated from justice in some instances when her interest and passions were concerned<sup>9</sup>; and, notwithstanding all her great qualities, we cannot deny<sup>10</sup> she was vain, proud, imperious, and in some cases cruel:

her predominant passions were jealousy and avarice; though she was also subject to such violent gusts of anger, as<sup>11</sup> overwhelmed all regard to the dignity of her station, and even hurried her<sup>12</sup> beyond the common bounds of decency. She was wise and steady in her principles of government, and above<sup>13</sup> all princes fortunate in her<sup>14</sup> ministry,—SMOLLETT.

<sup>1</sup> *De.* <sup>2</sup> *Strong limbed = fortement bâtie.* <sup>3</sup> Put a semi-colon, and literally say: *she had the forehead high and round, the eyes brown, the complexion fair, the teeth fine and white and the hair yellow (blond).* See Ex. XVI. Note <sup>20</sup>, Part III. <sup>4</sup> *To play, to play upon,* before the name of instruments are translated by *jouer de.* <sup>5</sup> *Language = langue.* *Langage* means the tenor of the *language.* <sup>6</sup> *Well read in = versée dans.* <sup>7</sup> *Ménager.* <sup>8</sup> See Ex. VII. Note <sup>2</sup>, Part I. <sup>9</sup> *When her interest and passions were concerned = quand il s'agissait de ses intérêts ou de ses passions.* *S'agir*, impersonal = *to be the question.* Ex.: *The question is whether I must go or not = il s'agit de savoir si je dois y aller ou non.* See Ex. XXXVIII. Note <sup>2</sup>, Part I. In French, the verb *aller* must always be used with *y*, referring to the place that has been previously named. *Aller* is never used, as in English, by itself, except in the future, for reason of euphony. *J'y irai* would sound very unpleasantly to the ear. The same should be said of the conditional. <sup>10</sup> *To deny = nier,* the contrary of *affirmer.* *To deny*, speaking of principles, opinions, doctrines, &c., is translated by *renier.* <sup>11</sup> *Subject to such violent gusts of anger as overwhelmed all regard to the dignity of her station = sujette à des accès de colère violents qui lui faisaient oublier le respect qu'elle devait à la dignité de son rang et de sa personne.* <sup>12</sup> *Hurried her = la précipitèrent.* <sup>13</sup> *Above all princes = plus que tout autre prince.* <sup>14</sup> *In her ministry = dans le choix de ses ministres.*

## XIX.—LOUIS XVI.

Louis XVI. was an arbitrary monarch; that is,<sup>1</sup> in other words, neither more nor less, than because he was Louis XVI., and because he had the misfortune to be born king of France, with the prerogatives of which, a long line of ancestors, and a long acquiescence of the people, without any act of his,<sup>2</sup> had put him in possession. A misfortune it has indeed turned out to him, that he was born king of France. But misfortune is

not crime, nor<sup>3</sup> is indiscretion always the greatest guilt. I shall never think that a prince, the acts of whose whole reign were a series of concessions to his subjects, who was willing<sup>4</sup> to relax his authority, to remit his prerogatives, to call his people to a share of freedom, not known, perhaps not desired by their ancestors; such a prince, though he should be subject to the common frailties attached to men and princes, though he should have once thought it<sup>5</sup> necessary to provide force against the desperate designs manifestly carrying on against his person, and the remnants of his authority; though all this should be taken into consideration, I shall be led with great difficulty to think he deserves the cruel and insulting triumph of Paris. I tremble for the cause of liberty, from<sup>6</sup> such an example to kings. I tremble for the cause of humanity, in<sup>7</sup> the unpunished outrages of the most wicked of mankind. But there are some people of that low and degenerate fashion of mind, that they look up<sup>8</sup> with a sort of complacent awe and admiration to kings, who know to keep<sup>9</sup> firm in<sup>10</sup> their seat, to hold a strict hand over their subjects, to assert their prerogative, and by the awakened vigilance of a severe despotism, to guard against the very first approaches of freedom. Against such as these, they never elevate their voice. Deserters from principle, listed with fortune, they never see any<sup>11</sup> good in suffering virtue, nor<sup>12</sup> any crime in prosperous usurpation.—BURKE's *Reflections on the Revolution in France*.

<sup>1</sup> That is, in other words, neither more nor less, than because he was Louis XVI. = *ce qui, en d'autres mots, veut simplement dire qu'il était Louis XVI.* Translate the following because by *que*.

<sup>2</sup> Without any act of his to be put in the end of the phrase. *Sans qu'aucun acte émanât de lui.* <sup>3</sup> Turn, and indiscretion is not. *Ni* is repeated before several words in one negative sentence, but is never used to connect two different sentences together, whether they are both negative or only one of them. *I like neither this nor that* = *je n'aime ni ceci ni cela.* <sup>4</sup> Who was willing to = *qui consentait à.* <sup>5</sup> See EX. XVI. Note 7, Part I. <sup>6</sup> From such an example to kings = *quand je considère cet exemple que l'on donne aux rois.* <sup>7</sup> In the unpunished outrages of the most wicked of

*mankind* = *quand je vois les plus méchants des hommes commettre impunément de pareilles actions.* <sup>8</sup> *To look up to* = *regarder.* <sup>9</sup> *To keep firm* = *se tenir ferme.* <sup>10</sup> *Sur.* <sup>11</sup> *They never see any good in suffering virtue* = *ils ne voient jamais à quoi cela peut servir d'être vertueux et de souffrir.* <sup>12</sup> See Note <sup>3</sup> above.

## XX.—THE VICAR OF WAKEFIELD ON MATRIMONY.

Matrimony was always one of my favourite topics, and I wrote several sermons to prove its<sup>1</sup> happiness : but there was a peculiar tenet which I made a point<sup>2</sup> of supporting ; for I maintained, with Whiston, that it<sup>3</sup> was unlawful for a priest of the Church of England, after the death of his first wife, to take a second ;<sup>4</sup> or, to express it in one word, I valued myself upon being a strict monogamist.

I was early initiated into this important dispute, on which so many laborious volumes have been written. I published some tracts upon the subject myself, which, as they never<sup>5</sup> sold, I have the consolation of thinking are read only by the happy few.<sup>6</sup> Some of my friends called this my weak side ; but, alas ! they had not made it<sup>7</sup> a subject of long contemplation. The more<sup>8</sup> I reflected upon it, the more important it appeared. I even went a step beyond Whiston in displaying my principles : as he had engraven upon his wife's tomb that she was the only wife of William Whiston ; so I wrote a similar epitaph for my wife, though still living, in which I extolled her prudence, economy, and obedience till death ; and having got it copied fair,<sup>9</sup> with an elegant frame, it was placed over the chimney-piece, where it answered<sup>10</sup> several very useful purposes. It admonished my wife of her duty to me, and my fidelity to her ; it inspired<sup>11</sup> her with a passion for fame : and constantly put<sup>12</sup> her in mind of her end.—OLIVER GOLDSMITH.

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. XXXII. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part I. <sup>2</sup> *To make a point of* = *se faire un devoir de.* <sup>3</sup> See Rule, Ex. XVI. Note <sup>7</sup>, Part I. <sup>4</sup> Turn,

to take a second of them. <sup>5</sup> To sell is neuter here. See Ex. XII. Note <sup>5</sup>, Part III. <sup>6</sup> The happy few = *le petit nombre des privilégiés*. <sup>7</sup> Turn, made of it. <sup>8</sup> The more I reflected upon it, the more important it appeared = *plus j'y réfléchissais, plus il me paraissait important*. The is left out and *plus* must be followed by the subject of the verb. <sup>9</sup> Having got it copied fair = *l'ayant fait recopier par une belle main*. <sup>10</sup> It answered several very useful purposes = *il rendit plusieurs services très-utiles*. <sup>11</sup> See Ex. XXVI. Note <sup>5</sup>, Part III. <sup>12</sup> To put some one in mind of something = *rappeler quelque chose à quelqu'un*. See Ex. XXVI. Note <sup>5</sup>, Part III.

---

## XXI.—JOHANN JACOBY.

The papers all speak charitably, if not kindly, of Johann Jacoby, who died on Tuesday at Königsberg. During recent years he had not been actively associated with any existing party, though his original personal and political friends, like Duncker and Virchow, are Progressists; but he had shown some sympathy with the social Democrats. With their visionary schemes he could have nothing to do, but they represented the most extreme form of opposition. Between the characters of Jacoby and Lassalle there was a good deal in common, for both were men of high culture, of keen and clear intellects, and of perfectly fearless natures. But the modern leaders of the Socialists are quite different persons, and Jacoby's connection with them was purely formal.

Even the *Post* pays a tribute, unwilling but just, to the intense earnestness and the fearless candour of the great agitator. It is,<sup>1</sup> perhaps, not too much to say that his trenchant pamphlet,<sup>2</sup> the "*Vier Tragen*," made the revolution of 1848, and gave Prussia her written constitution and her parliament. Even those who were not convinced by the iron logic of the work were amazed and captivated by the audacity of the author, who posted<sup>3</sup> a copy directly to his majesty Frederic William IV. That prince had, however, as little respect for courage as for justice, and he summoned his

courts to punish the bold Jew. The most dramatic incident in Jacoby's career was, however, in 1848, when a deputation of which he was a member waited<sup>4</sup> upon the king to present an address from the Diet. The king took the paper and turned away. Jacoby stepped<sup>5</sup> forward and said, "Your majesty!<sup>6</sup> we are not come simply to present this paper, but also to discuss with you the condition of the country. Will you listen to us?" "No!" replied the king, gruffly and rudely. Jacoby turned<sup>7</sup> to his companions, and, in tones that rang<sup>8</sup> through the palace, said "It<sup>9</sup> is the misfortune of kings that they are unwilling to hear the truth!" Never before had such a sentiment been ~~launched~~ <sup>lurled</sup> in the face of Frederic William IV.; and if that had been possible his vengeance would certainly have fallen upon the indomitable deputy. A curious discussion was provoked by this incident. The enemies of Jacoby had always described him as a Republican, but Dr. Weiss maintained that this famous sentence proved just the contrary. If Jacoby had been a Republican, said his apologist, he would have said it was the fortune, not the misfortune, of kings that they will not hear the truth. The point is, perhaps, a fine<sup>10</sup> one. In fact, Jacoby had no intention in 1848 of overturning the institution of monarchy, but on<sup>11</sup> the other hand he had certainly no abstract regard for crowns and thrones.

The last time when<sup>12</sup> Jacoby got<sup>13</sup> into trouble for his opinions was in 1870. He alone, or almost alone of his countrymen, attempted to confront the frenzy of national exultation with a protest against the plan to annex Alsace-Lorraine without the consent of the people of those provinces. But there happened<sup>14</sup> to be a general commanding at Königsberg, who, being several hundred miles from the seat of real war, gloriously attacked and captured the Hebrew doctor of medicine. As no martial law existed at the time<sup>15</sup> there were people<sup>16</sup> who timidly whispered that this was an outrage. Bismarck, who was then at Versailles, paid<sup>17</sup> no attention to the complaints on the subject



until the English Press began to denounce the affair, and then Jacoby was suddenly released without trial, without any satisfaction whatever. Only history will judge between him and General Von Falkenstein. Although Jacoby was very old—he was born in 1805—his general health was good, and the circumstances of his death were like those of the Emperor Napoleon. The operation was completed, but he only survived it<sup>18</sup> three days, and died after intense suffering.<sup>19</sup>—*Daily News*, March 12, 1877.

<sup>1</sup> *It is not too much to say* = *ce n'est pas aller trop loin que de dire*, or *ce n'est pas exagérer*. <sup>2</sup> *Pamphlet mordant*. <sup>3</sup> *To post* = *envoyer par la poste*. <sup>4</sup> *To wait upon* = *se présenter à, se présenter chez*. <sup>5</sup> *To step forward* = *s'avancer*. <sup>6</sup> *Your majesty* is not translated by *votre majesté*, in the vocative case. It is *sire* or *madame*, according as you speak to a king or a queen, an emperor or an empress. <sup>7</sup> *To turn to* = *se tourner vers*. <sup>8</sup> *To ring* = *résonner*. <sup>9</sup> *It is the misfortune of kings that they are unwilling to hear the truth* = *les rois ne veulent pas entendre la vérité, voilà or c'est là leur malheur*. <sup>10</sup> *Fine* = *subtil*. <sup>11</sup> *On the other hand* = *d'un autre côté*. <sup>12</sup> *When* = *que*. Begin the sentence thus: *Ce fut en 1870 que . . .* <sup>13</sup> *To get into trouble* = *être tourmenté*. <sup>14</sup> *But there happened to be* = *mais il se trouva là*. <sup>15</sup> *At the time* = *au moment, à cette époque*. <sup>16</sup> *There were people* = *il y eut des gens*. <sup>17</sup> *To pay attention* = *faire attention*. <sup>18</sup> *To survive* = *survivre à (to it = y, before the verb)*. <sup>19</sup> *After intense suffering* = *après d'horribles souffrances*.

## XXII.—THE MICROSCOPE MORALISED.

"You know the use of that *solar microscope*, and are able to inform<sup>1</sup> me of its<sup>2</sup> effects.

"*Theron*. I ought to be pretty well acquainted<sup>3</sup> with these experiments, since it has<sup>4</sup> long been my favourite diversion to employ a few spare<sup>5</sup> hours in such agreeable speculations.

"*Aspasio*. You have seen the body of an insect accommodated to the surprising instrument. When in this situation, the animal was pricked by a very fine needle; your eye, your naked eye, just<sup>6</sup> perceived the *puncture*; and discovered, perhaps, a *speck* of moisture

oozing from the orifice. But in<sup>7</sup> what manner were they represented by the magnifying instrument?

"*Ther.* The puncture was widened into a frightful *gash*. The speck of moisture swelled into a copious stream; and flowed, like a *torrent*, from the gaping<sup>8</sup> wound. An ox, under the sacrificing knife, scarce looks more bulky, or bleeds more largely.

"*Asp.* Don't you apprehend my design? If *we*, short-sighted mortals, and almost blinded with<sup>9</sup> self-love; if *we* cannot but be sensible of our faults; how<sup>10</sup> flagrant must they appear, in what enormous magnitude, and with what aggravating circumstances, to an eye perfectly pure and infinitely penetrating?"—SOUTHEY'S COMMON-PLACE BOOK (*HERVEY'S Dialogues*).

<sup>1</sup> *Dire.* <sup>2</sup> See Ex. XXXII. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part I. <sup>3</sup> *To be pretty well acquainted with* = *être assez bien au fait de.* <sup>4</sup> *Since* (prep.) = *depuis*; *since* (conj.) = *puisque*, after which the present of the indicative must be used, because the action expressed by the verb is still going on. *Since I was or have been here* = *depuis que je suis ici.* *Since it has long been* = *puisque c'est depuis longtemps.* <sup>5</sup> *Spare hours* = *heures de loisir.* <sup>6</sup> *A peine.* See Ex. I. Note<sup>2</sup>, Part I. <sup>7</sup> *In what manner* = *de quelle manière* or *comment.* <sup>8</sup> *Gaping wound* = *plaie béante.* <sup>9</sup> *Par.* <sup>10</sup> See Ex. XXXIX. Note<sup>9</sup>, Part I.

### XXIII.—GENEROSITY A VIRTUE OF HEALTH.

If it<sup>1</sup> was necessary here, or<sup>2</sup> there was time to refine upon this doctrine, one might further<sup>3</sup> maintain, exclusive<sup>4</sup> of the happiness which the mind itself feels in the exercise of this virtue, that the very body of man is never in a better state than when<sup>5</sup> he is most inclined to do good offices: that as<sup>6</sup> nothing more contributes to health than a benevolence of temper, so nothing generally was a stronger indication of it.

And what seems to confirm this opinion, is an observation, the truth of which must be submitted to every one's reflection, namely, that a disinclination and backwardness to good, is often attended,<sup>7</sup> if not produced, by

an indisposition of the animal as well as rational part of us<sup>8</sup>: so naturally do the soul and body mutually befriend, or prey upon<sup>9</sup> each other. And indeed, setting aside all abstruser reasoning upon the point, I cannot conceive, but that the very *mechanical motions* which maintain life, must be performed with more equal vigour and freedom in that man whom a great and good soul perpetually inclines to show mercy to the miserable, than they can<sup>10</sup> be in a poor, sordid, selfish wretch, whose little, contracted heart, melts at no man's affection; but sits brooding so intently over its own plots and concerns, as to see and feel nothing; and, in truth, enjoying nothing beyond himself.—STERNE'S *Sermons*.

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. XVII. Note <sup>7</sup>, Part I. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. XVII. Note <sup>5</sup>, Part I.  
<sup>3</sup> *Further* = *encore*. <sup>4</sup> *Exclusive* (used as an adverb) = *indépendamment*. <sup>5</sup> *Avoid quand after que*. See Ex. XIX. Note <sup>16</sup>, Part II.  
<sup>6</sup> *As . . . so* = *comme . . . de même*. <sup>7</sup> *Attended* = *accompagné, suivi*. <sup>8</sup> *Of us* = *de nous-mêmes*. <sup>9</sup> See Ex. LXXV. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>10</sup> See Rule, Ex. IV. Note <sup>12</sup>, Part II

#### XXIV.—INSECTS BETTER GOVERNED THAN MEN.

He that shall well consider the commonwealth of the bees; how<sup>1</sup> strict they are within the territories of their own hives; how just they are in putting<sup>2</sup> those statutes in execution concerning idle persons and vagabonds, and likewise the employment of day-labourers; what an excellent order there appears<sup>3</sup> between them; how great the obedience is from the inferior to the superior; he will easily confess that the greatest temporal happiness of man, which consists in a good government, whereby he is secured of his person and state, is much more eminently discerned amongst beasts than amongst men. I will not only insist on the bee, who seems to teach us a platform and a precedent of a perfect monarchy: it is long since<sup>4</sup> agreed and con-

cluded in philosophy, that such disorder, such difference and disagreement, such hate and enmity, as is between man and man, cannot be found in the rest of the creatures, *nisi inter dispares feras*, unless<sup>5</sup> it<sup>6</sup> be in<sup>7</sup> beasts of a different kind, and in the deserts and wilderness where ravenous creatures do together inhabit. Such is the providence and government of nature, that they live as peaceably as we do<sup>8</sup> in our best walled fortresses and towns: the city gates, though shut, yet sometimes threaten as dangerous home-bred conspiracies, as they do secure of<sup>9</sup> outward\* foreign invasions.—GOODMAN'S *Fall of Man*.

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. XXXIX. Note <sup>9</sup>, Part I. <sup>2</sup> *To put in execution* = *mettre à exécution*. <sup>3</sup> *There appears* = *semble régner*. <sup>4</sup> *It is long since* = *il y a longtemps que* (*on a, &c.*). <sup>5</sup> The three conjunctive locutions: *de peur que*, *de crainte que*, and *à moins que* require the subjunctive and *ne* before the verb in the subjunctive. <sup>6</sup> *Cela*. <sup>7</sup> *Chez*. <sup>8</sup> Turn, *as we*. Do not translate *do*. <sup>9</sup> *To secure of* = *défendre, protéger contre*.

## XXV.—BONAPARTE'S EXPEDIENT.

When Bonaparte put the Duke D'Enghien to death, all Paris felt<sup>1</sup> so much horror at the event, that the throne of the tyrant trembled under him. A counter revolution was expected, and would most probably have taken place, had not Bonaparte ordered<sup>2</sup> a new ballet to be brought out,<sup>3</sup> with the utmost splendour, at the Opera. The subject he pitched upon was, "*Ossian, or the Bards*." It is still recollected in Paris as perhaps the grandest spectacle that had<sup>4</sup> ever been exhibited there. The consequence was, that the murder of the Duke D'Enghien was totally forgotten.—SIR JOHN SINCLAIR.

<sup>1</sup> *All Paris felt so much horror at the event* = *tout Paris se sentit frappé de tant d'horreur à la nouvelle de l'événement*. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>, and Ex. VII. Note <sup>4</sup>, Part I. <sup>3</sup> *To bring out at the Opera* = *représenter à l'Opéra*. <sup>4</sup> See Rule, Ex. XXXVIII. Note <sup>10</sup>, Part I.

## XXVI.—THE CATARACT OF YERVENKYLE.

We had been extremely anxious to see a cataract in winter, and that of Yervenkyle did not disappoint our expectations.

It is formed by the river Kyso, which, issuing from the lake of the same name, precipitates itself through some steep and rugged rocks, and falls, so far<sup>1</sup> as I can guess, from a height of about seventy yards. The water dashing from rock to<sup>2</sup> rock, boils and foams till it reaches the bottom, where it pursues a more tranquil course, and, after<sup>3</sup> making a large circuit, loses itself again between mountainous banks, which are covered with fir trees. That<sup>4</sup> we might have a more commanding view of the picture, we took our station on a high ground, from which we had a distant prospect of a large tract of country of a varied surface, and almost covered with woods of firs, the pleasing verdure of which, acquiring additional lustre from the solar rays, formed an agreeable contrast with the snow and masses of ice hanging from the margin over the cascade.

The fall presented<sup>5</sup> us with one of those appearances which we much desired to see, as being peculiar to the regions of the north, and which are never to<sup>6</sup> be met with in Italy. The water, throwing itself amidst enormous masses of ice, which here<sup>7</sup> and there have the aspect of gloomy vaults fringed with curious crystallizations, and the cold being of such rigour as<sup>8</sup> almost to freeze the agitated waves and vapours in the air, had formed gradually two bridges of ice across the cascade, of such solidity and strength, that men passed over them in perfect security. The waves raging and foaming below with a vast noise, were in a state of such violent motion, as to spout water now<sup>9</sup> and then on the top of the bridge; a circumstance which rendered its<sup>10</sup> surface so exceedingly slippery, that the peasants were obliged to pass it<sup>11</sup> creeping on their hands and knees.—ACERBI.

<sup>1</sup> *So far as* = *autant que*. <sup>2</sup> *From rock to rock* = *de rocher en rocher*. *From time to time* = *de temps en temps*. *From door to door* = *de porte en porte*. <sup>3</sup> See Ex. XVII. Note <sup>7</sup>, Part I. <sup>4</sup> *In order that*. <sup>5</sup> *To present some one with something* = *présenter quelque chose à quelqu'un*. Active verbs are nearly always used with the noun of thing in the accusative and the noun of person in the dative. Ex.: *To ask some one for something* = *demandeur quelque chose à quelqu'un*. *To buy something of some one* = *acheter quelque chose à quelqu'un*. *The fall presented us with one of those appearances* = *la cascade nous présentait or nous offrait un de ces spectacles*. <sup>6</sup> *Which are never to be met*. Turn, *which one can never meet*. <sup>7</sup> *Here and there* = *ça et là*. <sup>8</sup> *Such . . . as* = *tel . . . que*. <sup>9</sup> *Now and then* = *quelque fois, de temps en temps*. <sup>10</sup> See Ex. XXXII. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part I. <sup>11</sup> See Ex. VI. Note <sup>11</sup>, Part II.

## XXVII.—FREDERIC THE GREAT AND THE LIBERTY OF THE PRESS.

Considered as an<sup>1</sup> administrator, Frederic had undoubtedly many titles to praise. Order was strictly maintained throughout his dominions. Property was secure. A great liberty of speaking and of writing was allowed. Confident in the irresistible strength derived from a great army, the king looked down on<sup>2</sup> malcontents and libellers with a wise disdain, and gave little encouragement to spies and informers. When he was told of the disaffection of one of his subjects, he merely asked: "How many thousand<sup>3</sup> men can he bring into the field?" He once saw a crowd staring at something on a wall. He rode up and found that the object of curiosity was a scurrilous placard against himself. The placard had been posted up so high that it was not easy to read it. Frederic ordered<sup>4</sup> his attendants to take it down and put it lower. "My people and I," he said, "have come to an agreement which satisfies us both. They are<sup>5</sup> to say what they please, and I am to do what I please." No person would have dared to publish in London satires on George the Second approaching to the atrocity of those

satires on Frederic, which the booksellers sold at Berlin with impunity.

Even among statesmen accustomed to the licence of a free press, such steadfastness of mind as this is not very common.—MACAULAY'S *Historical Essays*.

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. II. Note <sup>12</sup>, Part II. <sup>2</sup> To look down on a traitor.  
<sup>3</sup> After how many, the noun *millier* must be used. *Combien de milliers d'hommes*. <sup>4</sup> Ordered his attendants to take it down and put it lower = *ordonna aux gens de sa suite de l'enlever et de le placer plus bas*. <sup>5</sup> They are to say what they please = *ils peuvent dire ce qui leur plait*.

## XXVIII.—MEN OF BUSINESS.

There is scarce a thinking man in the world, who is involved in the business of it, but<sup>1</sup> lives under a secret impatience of the hurry and fatigue he suffers, and has formed a resolution to fix himself, one time<sup>2</sup> or other, in such a state, as is suitable to the end of his being. You hear men every day in conversation profess, that all the honour, power, and riches which they propose to themselves, cannot give satisfaction enough to reward them for half the anxiety they undergo in the pursuit, or possession of them. While men are in this temper, how inconsistent are they with themselves! They are wearied with the toil they bear, but cannot find in their hearts to relinquish it; retirement is what<sup>3</sup> they want, but they cannot betake<sup>4</sup> themselves to it; while they pant after shade and covert, they still affect to appear in the most glittering scenes of life: but sure this is just as reasonable as if a man should call<sup>5</sup> for more lights, when he has a mind<sup>6</sup> to go to sleep.

Since then it is certain that our own hearts deceive us in the love of the world, and that we cannot command<sup>7</sup> ourselves enough to resign it, though we every day wish ourselves disengaged from its allurements; let us not stand upon a formal taking<sup>8</sup> of leave, but wean ourselves from them, while we are in the midst of them.

It is certainly the general intention of the greater part of mankind to accomplish this work, and live according to their own approbation, as soon as they possibly can : but since the duration of life is so uncertain (and that has<sup>9</sup> been a common topic of discourse ever since<sup>10</sup> there was a thing as life itself), how<sup>11</sup> is it possible that we should<sup>12</sup> defer a moment the beginning to live according to the rules of reason?—*STEELE, The Spectator.*

<sup>1</sup> *Qui ne*, with the subjunctive, because *scarce* is considered as a negative. For *ne* see Ex. XXXVIII. Note <sup>11</sup>, Part I. <sup>2</sup> *One time or other* = *un jour ou l'autre*. <sup>3</sup> *What they want* = *ce qu'il leur faut*. *I want money* = *il me faut de l'argent*. *What do you want?* = *que vous faut-il?* <sup>4</sup> *They cannot betake themselves to it* = *ils ne peuvent pas s'y adonner*. <sup>5</sup> *If a man should call for more lights* = *si un homme demandait plus de lumière qu'il n'en a*. See Ex. XXI. Note <sup>7</sup>, Part II. and Ex. IV. Note <sup>13</sup>, Part II. <sup>6</sup> *To have a mind to* = *avoir envie de*. <sup>7</sup> *We cannot command ourselves enough to* = *nous ne pouvons pas avoir assez d'empire sur nous-mêmes pour*. <sup>8</sup> *Taking of leave* = *adieux* (plural). <sup>9</sup> The verb to be put in the present, as the action expressed by it is still going on. <sup>10</sup> *Ever since there was* = *depuis qu'il y a*. See Note <sup>9</sup> above. <sup>11</sup> *How is it?* = *comment cela se fait-il?* *How is it that . . .* = *comment se fait-il que . . .* *How is it possible that . . .* *comment se peut-il faire que . . .* *Faire* in the above expression, is used impersonally. <sup>12</sup> *Should defer*, to be put in the subjunctive mood after a verb used impersonally.

## XXIX.—YOUNG MEN OF SPIRIT AND GAIETY.

Rasselas rose next day, and resolved to begin his experiments upon life. "Youth," cried he, "is the time of gladness : I will join myself to the young men, whose only business is to gratify<sup>1</sup> their desires, and whose time is all spent in a succession of enjoyments."

To such societies he was readily admitted, but a<sup>2</sup> few days brought him back, weary and disgusted. Their mirth was without images, their laughter without motive, their pleasures were gross, in which the mind had<sup>3</sup> no part; their conduct was, at once,<sup>4</sup> wild and



mean; they laughed at<sup>5</sup> order and at law; but the frown of power dejected, and the eye of wisdom abashed them.

The prince soon concluded, that he should never be happy in a course of life of which he was ashamed. He thought it<sup>6</sup> unsuitable to a reasonable being to act without a plan, and to be sad or cheerful only by chance. "Happiness," said he, "must be something<sup>7</sup> solid and permanent, without fear and without uncertainty."

But his young companions had gained<sup>8</sup> so much of his regard, by their frankness and courtesy,<sup>9</sup> that he could not leave them without warning and remonstrance.

"My friends," said he, "I have seriously considered our manners and our prospects, and find that we have mistaken<sup>10</sup> our own interest. The first years of man must make provision for the last. He<sup>11</sup> that never thinks, never can be wise. Perpetual levity must end in ignorance; and intemperance, though it may fire the spirits for an hour, will make life short or miserable.

"Let us consider that youth is of no long duration, and that in maturer age, when the enchantments of fancy shall cease, and<sup>12</sup> phantoms of delight dance no more about us, we shall have no<sup>13</sup> comforts but the esteem of wise men, and the means of doing<sup>14</sup> good. Let us, therefore, stop, while to stop is in our power: let us live as men who are some time to grow<sup>15</sup> old, and to whom it will be the most dreadful of all evils, not<sup>16</sup> to count their past years but by follies, and<sup>17</sup> to be reminded of their former luxuriance of health, only by the maladies which riot<sup>18</sup> has produced."

They stared<sup>19</sup> a while in silence one upon another, and at last drove him away, by a general chorus of continued laughter.

The consciousness that his sentiments were just, and<sup>20</sup> his intention kind, was scarcely sufficient to support him against the horror of derision: but he recovered his tranquillity, and pursued his search.—  
JOHNSON.

<sup>1</sup> *To gratify* = *satisfaire*. <sup>2</sup> *A few days brought him back* = *il revint peu de jours après*. <sup>3</sup> *To have no part in* = *n'avoir aucune part à*. <sup>4</sup> *At once* = *à la fois*, when it means *at a time, at the same time*. When it means *immediately*, translate the expression by *à l'instant, de suite, sur-le-champ*. <sup>5</sup> *To laugh at* = *se rire* or *se moquer de*. <sup>6</sup> *Turn, he thought that it was unsuitable*. See Ex. XVI. Note <sup>7</sup>, Part I. <sup>7</sup> See Ex. LIX. Note <sup>2</sup>, Part I. <sup>8</sup> *Had gained so much of his regard* = *avaient tellement gagné son affection*. <sup>9</sup> *Courtesy* = *amabilité, politesse, courtoisie*. <sup>10</sup> *We have mistaken our interest* = *nous n'avons pas compris nos intérêts*. <sup>11</sup> *He that* = *celui qui*. *The one who* = *celui* or *celle qui*. <sup>12</sup> See Ex. XVII. Note <sup>5</sup>, Part I. <sup>13</sup> *We shall have no comforts but* = *nous n'aurons d'autre consolation que*. <sup>14</sup> *To do good*, in general, is *faire le bien*. But, in a particular case, it would be *faire du bien*. *To do good to some one* = *faire du bien à quelqu'un*. <sup>15</sup> *To grow old* = *vieillir*, from *vieil*. *Some time* = *un jour*. Verbs formed from nouns belong to the first conjugation; verbs formed from adjectives belong to the second. <sup>16</sup> *Not to count their past years, but* = *de ne compter leurs années passées que*. The words *an, matin, jour, and soir*, designate the subdivisions of time; the words *année, matinée, journée, and soirée* refer to the duration of these subdivisions of time. *I have come for the day* = *je suis venu pour la journée*. *I will spend the evening with you* = *je passerai la soirée avec vous*. *The whole year* = *toute l'année* or *l'année tout entière*. *I am thirty years old* = *j'ai trente ans*, not *années*; I have of course been living the whole duration of each year. <sup>17</sup> *And to be reminded of . . . . only* = *et de n'avoir comme souvenir de . . . . que*. <sup>18</sup> *Riot*, in this case, is *orgies* or *excès*, both in the plural. <sup>19</sup> *To stare one upon another* = *ils se regardèrent les uns les autres*. Speaking of two persons only, I should have said: *ils se regardèrent l'un l'autre*. <sup>20</sup> *Turn, and that his intention was kind*.

### XXX.—DEATH OF WILLIAM THE THIRD.

The king meanwhile was sinking fast.<sup>1</sup> Albemarle had arrived at Kensington from the Hague, exhausted by rapid travelling. His master kindly bade him go to rest for some hours, and then summoned him to make his report. That report was in all respects<sup>2</sup> satisfactory. The States-General were in the best temper;<sup>3</sup> the troops, the provisions, and the magazines were in the best order. Everything was in readiness for an early campaign. William received the intelligence

with the calmness of a man whose work was done. He was under no illusion as to his danger. "I am<sup>4</sup> fast drawing," he said, "to my end." His end was worthy of his life. His intellect was not for a moment clouded. His fortitude was the more<sup>5</sup> admirable because he was not willing to die. He had very lately said to one of those whom he most loved: "You know that I never feared death; there have been times when I should have wished it; but, now that this great new prospect is opening<sup>6</sup> before me, I do wish to stay here a little longer." Yet no weakness, no querulousness, disgraced the noble close of that noble career. To the physicians the king returned his thanks graciously and gently. "I know that you have done all that<sup>7</sup> skill and learning could<sup>8</sup> do for me; but the case is beyond your art; and I submit."<sup>9</sup> From the words which escaped him he seemed to be frequently engaged in mental prayer. Burnet and Tenison remained many hours in the sick-room. He professed to them his firm belief in the truth of the Christian religion, and received the sacrament from their hands with great seriousness. The ante-chambers were crowded<sup>10</sup> all night with lords and privy-councillors. He ordered<sup>11</sup> several of them to be called in, and exerted himself to take leave of them with a few kind and cheerful words. Among the English who were admitted to his bedside were Devonshire and Ormond. But there were in the crowd those who felt<sup>12</sup> as no Englishman could feel, friends of his youth who had been true to him, and to whom he had been true, through all vicissitudes of fortune; who had served him with unalterable fidelity when his Secretaries of State, his Treasury<sup>13</sup> and his Admiralty<sup>14</sup> had betrayed him; who had never on any field of battle, or in any atmosphere tainted with loathsome and deadly disease, shrunk from placing their own lives in jeopardy to save his, and whose truth he had at the cost<sup>15</sup> of his own popularity rewarded with bounteous munificence. He strained his feeble voice to thank Auverquerque for the affectionate and loyal services of thirty years. To Albemarle he gave the keys of his closet, and of his

private drawers. "You know," he said, "what to do<sup>16</sup> with them." By this time<sup>17</sup> he could scarcely breathe. "Can this," he said to the physicians, "last long?" He was told that the end was approaching. He swallowed a cordial, and asked for Bentinck. Those were his last articulate words. Bentinck instantly came to the bedside, bent down, and placed his ear close to the king's mouth. The lips of the dying man moved: but nothing could be heard. The king took the hand of his earliest friend and pressed it tenderly to<sup>18</sup> his heart. In that moment, no doubt, all that had cast<sup>19</sup> a slight passing cloud over their long and pure friendship was forgotten. It was now<sup>17</sup> between seven and eight in the morning. He closed his<sup>20</sup> eyes, and gasped<sup>21</sup> for breath. The bishops knelt down and read the commendatory prayer. When it ended William was no more.—MACAULAY'S *England*.

<sup>1</sup> *The king meanwhile was sinking fast* = *cependant le roi baissait rapidement*. <sup>2</sup> *Translate report by rapport*, and *in all respects by à tous égards*. <sup>3</sup> *In best temper* = *on ne peut mieux disposés*. <sup>4</sup> *To be fast drawing to* = *s'approcher rapidement de*. <sup>5</sup> *The more . . . because* = *d'autant plus . . . que*. <sup>6</sup> See Ex. XII. Note <sup>5</sup>, Part III. <sup>7</sup> *All that* = *tout ce qui* (nom.), *tout ce que* (accus.). <sup>8</sup> See Ex. XXXIII. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part I. <sup>9</sup> See Ex. XII. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part III. <sup>10</sup> *Crowded with* = *encombré de, plein de*. <sup>11</sup> *He ordered* followed by the subjunctive. See Ex. III. Note <sup>1</sup>, and Ex. VII. Note <sup>4</sup>, Part I.—*Of them* = *en*, before the verb. <sup>12</sup> *Who felt as no Englishman could feel* = *ceux qui ressentaient ce qu'aucun Anglais ne pouvait ressentir*. <sup>13</sup> *Avoid taking a collective of this sort*. Say, for instance, the *chiefs* or the *lords of the Treasury*. <sup>14</sup> See Note <sup>13</sup> above. <sup>15</sup> *Cost* = *prix*. <sup>16</sup> *To know what to do* = *savoir que faire*.—*With them*. Turn, of them. <sup>17</sup> *By this time* = *alors*. <sup>18</sup> *To his heart* = *contre son cœur*. <sup>19</sup> *All that had cast a slight passing cloud over their long and pure friendship was forgotten* = *tout ce qui avait pu troubler un moment la pureté d'une longue amitié fut oublié*. See Note <sup>7</sup> above. <sup>20</sup> See Ex. XVI. Note <sup>20</sup>, Part III. <sup>21</sup> *To gasp for breath* = *faire des efforts pour respirer*.

## XXXI.—DIFFERENT WAYS OF DISCUSSING.

I have sometimes amused myself with<sup>1</sup> considering the several<sup>2</sup> methods of managing a debate which have obtained<sup>3</sup> in the world.

The first races of mankind used to dispute, as our ordinary people do<sup>4</sup> nowadays, in a kind of wild logic, uncultivated by rules of art.

Socrates introduced a catechetical method of arguing. He would<sup>5</sup> ask his adversary question upon question, till<sup>6</sup> he had convinced him out of his own mouth that his opinions were wrong. This way of debating drives an enemy up<sup>7</sup> into a corner, seizes all the passes through which he can make an escape, and forces him to surrender at discretion.

Aristotle changed this method of attack, and invented a great variety of little weapons, called syllogisms. As in the Socratic way of dispute you agree to everything which your opponent advances, in the Aristotelic you are still denying and contradicting some part or other of what he says. Socrates conquers you by stratagem, Aristotle by force : the one takes the town by sap, the other sword<sup>8</sup> in hand.

The universities of Europe, for<sup>9</sup> many years, carried on their debates by syllogism, insomuch<sup>10</sup> that we see the knowledge of several centuries laid out<sup>11</sup> into objections and answers, and all the good sense of the age cut and minced into almost an infinitude of distinctions.

When our universities found that there was no end of wrangling this way,<sup>12</sup> they invented a kind of argument, which is not reducible to any mood or figure in Aristotle. It was called the *argumentum baculinum*, which is pretty well expressed in our English word *club-law*. When they were not able to confute their antagonist, they knocked him down. It was their method in these polemical debates, first to discharge their syllogisms, and afterwards to betake themselves to their clubs, till such time as they had one way<sup>13</sup> or

other confounded their gainsayers. There is in Oxford a narrow defile (to make use of a military term) where the partizans used to encounter, for which reason it still retains the name of *Logic Lane*. I have heard an old gentleman, a physician, make his<sup>14</sup> boasts, that when he was a young fellow he marched several times at the head of a troop of *Scotists*,<sup>15</sup> and cudgelled a body of *Smiglesians*<sup>15</sup> half the length of *High Street*, till they had dispersed themselves for shelter into their respective garrisons.

This humour, I find, went very far in<sup>16</sup> Erasmus's time. For that author tells us, that upon the revival of Greek letters, most of<sup>17</sup> the universities in Europe were divided into Greeks and Trojans. The latter were those who bore a mortal enmity to the language of the Grecians, insomuch that if they met with any who understood it, they did not fail to treat him as a foe. Erasmus himself had, it seems, the misfortune to fall into the hands of a party of Trojans, who laid on him with so many blows and buffets that he never forgot their hostilities to<sup>18</sup> his dying day.—ADDISON, *Spectator*.

*To amuse one's self with* = *s'amuser à*. <sup>2</sup> *Différent*. <sup>3</sup> *To obtain* (neuter) = *exister*. <sup>4</sup> *Turn, do it*. <sup>5</sup> See Ex. XI. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part II. and Ex. LXXVII. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part I. <sup>6</sup> *Till he had convinced him out of his own mouth that his opinions were wrong* = *jusqu'à ce qu'il lui eût fait avouer de sa propre bouche que ses opinions étaient fausses*. <sup>7</sup> *Up into a corner* = *dans une impasse*. <sup>8</sup> See Ex. V. Note <sup>5</sup>, Part I. <sup>9</sup> See Ex. VII. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part II. <sup>10</sup> *In-somuch* = *tellement*, or *si bien*. <sup>11</sup> *Laid out into* = *composé de*. <sup>12</sup> *This way*, to be placed immediately after the verb. <sup>13</sup> *One way or other* = *d'une manière ou d'une autre*. <sup>14</sup> *To make one's boast* = *se vanter de*, with the following verb in the infinitive. <sup>15</sup> *Scotists* and *Smiglesians* were followers of the scholastic philosopher Scotus and of the Polish Jesuit Smiglecius. In French *Scotiste* and *Smiglésien*. <sup>16</sup> *In Erasmus's time* = *du temps d'Erasmus*. <sup>17</sup> *Most of* = *la plupart de*. <sup>18</sup> *To*, meaning *as far as, until*, is translated by *jusqu'à*.

---

## XXXII.—WILL SUMMERS, THE KING'S FOOL.

Lean he was, hollow-eyed,<sup>1</sup> as all report,  
 And stoop he did too, yet in all the court  
 Few men were more beloved than was<sup>2</sup> this fool,  
 Whose merry prate kept<sup>3</sup> with the king much rule.  
 When he was sad the king with him would<sup>4</sup> rhyme,  
 Thus Will exiled sadness many a time.<sup>5</sup>

—He was a poor man's friend,  
 And help'd the widow often in the end.  
 The king would ever grant what he did crave,  
 For well he knew Will no<sup>6</sup> exacting knave;  
 But wish'd<sup>7</sup> the king to do good deeds great store,  
 Which<sup>8</sup> caused the court to love him more and more.<sup>9</sup>  
 —ARMIN'S, *Nest of Ninnies*.

<sup>1</sup> To be hollow-eyed = avoir les yeux creux. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. XXI. Note <sup>12</sup>, Part I., and Ex. IV. Note <sup>13</sup>, Part II. <sup>3</sup> Kept with the king much rule = avait beaucoup d'influence sur le roi. <sup>4</sup> See Ex. XI. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part II. <sup>5</sup> Many a time = bien des fois. <sup>6</sup> Turn, for he knew well that Will was not an exacting knave. <sup>7</sup> Turn, he wished that the king, &c. See Ex. VII. Note <sup>4</sup>, Part I. <sup>8</sup> Which here refers to all that precedes, not to one particular noun, it is therefore ce qui. Which caused the court to love him = ce qui fit que la cour l'aima. <sup>9</sup> More and more = de plus en plus.

## XXXIII.—THEORY AND PRACTICE.

James Granger, vicar, preached<sup>1</sup> a sermon, October 18th, 1779, in the parish church of Shiplake, Oxfordshire, and published it under the title of an *Apology for the Brute Creation; or Abuse of Animals Considered*. Will it be believed that this very sensible discourse gave disgust to two considerable congregations, and that the mention of dogs and horses was considered as a prostitution of the dignity of the pulpit? This made him publish it. He dedicated it to T. B. Drayman, and

addressing him as Neighbour Tom, reminded him that he had seen him exercise the lash with greater rage, and heard him at the same time swear more roundly and forcibly, than<sup>2</sup> he had ever seen or heard any of his brethren of the whip in London. Should he find any hard words in the discourse, he told him that if he could come to the vicarage, he would endeavour to explain them. And he warned him that if he did not alter his conduct, he would take care<sup>3</sup> to have him punished by a justice of peace.<sup>4</sup>—*Monthly Review*.

<sup>1</sup> Use the verb *faire* to avoid a tautology. See Ex. XVII. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part I. <sup>2</sup> See Ex. IV. Note <sup>13</sup>, Part II. <sup>3</sup> *He would take care to have him punished* = *il aurait soin de le faire punir*. <sup>4</sup> *Justice of peace* = *juge de paix*.

### XXXIV.—TOBACCO.

#### SINGULAR TASTE OF AN ASS.

There is now in the possession of Mr. Walton, farmer, of Great Lever, near Bolton, a male ass, which is known<sup>1</sup> to be nearly fifty years of age. He is named "Billy," and prefers tobacco to any other luxury; he is likewise very fond of a pinch<sup>2</sup> of snuff. Our informant has within<sup>3</sup> these few days seen Billy masticate a large quid of pigtail with as much *gout* as any Jack Tar<sup>4</sup> in his majesty's service. When he had finished the tobacco, a pinch of strong rappee was administered, which Billy snuffed<sup>5</sup> without the least demur, and curling up his olfactory organ, delivered one of those charming solos so peculiar to his species. Billy is chiefly employed in<sup>6</sup> carrying milk from his master's farm to Bolton; and if Mr. Walton has any business to transact in the town, he can leave Billy with security at the door of any customer, whence he will not budge an inch<sup>7</sup> until he hears his master's voice. Billy is invariably accompanied on<sup>8</sup> his journeys to Bolton by a small cur dog, which is so attached to



him that in the absence of Mr. Walton, he takes his station close to Billy, and will not suffer<sup>9</sup> any stranger to come near him.—*Monthly Review*.

<sup>1</sup> Which is known to be nearly fifty years of age = *que l'on sait avoir près de cinquante ans.* <sup>2</sup> A pinch of snuff = *une prise.* <sup>3</sup> Within these few days = *ces derniers jours.* <sup>4</sup> Jack Tar = *matelot, loup de mer.* <sup>5</sup> Snuffed = *aspirait, se fourrait dans le nez.* <sup>6</sup> à, with the infinitive. <sup>7</sup> Whence he will not budge an inch = *il n'en bougera pas d'un pouce.* <sup>8</sup> On his journeys = *dans ses voyages.* <sup>9</sup> *Souffrir que*, followed by the subjunctive.

### XXXV.—EFFECTS OF MUSIC.

A woman, twenty-eight years of age,<sup>1</sup> of a robust constitution, attended a<sup>2</sup> ball which was given on<sup>3</sup> the occasion of a rural *fête* in her native<sup>4</sup> village. It so happened<sup>5</sup> that she had never heard the music of an orchestra before; she was charmed with it, and danced for<sup>6</sup> three days successively, during which the festivity lasted. But though the ball was at an end, the woman continued to hear the music; whether<sup>7</sup> she ate, drank, walked, or went to bed, still was she haunted by the harmonies of the orchestra. She was sleepless, her digestive organs began to suffer, and ultimately her whole system was deranged. Various remedies were tried to drown the imaginary music, but the more<sup>8</sup> her body became enfeebled the more intensely did the musical sounds disturb her mind. She sank at last, after six months' nervous suffering. It should be added, that the leader of the band having occasionally indulged<sup>9</sup> in a discordant *capriccio* for the amusement of his auditors, the notes which he played produced the most torturing effect when they recurred to the imagination of the patient: "Those horrid sounds!" she would<sup>10</sup> cry, as<sup>11</sup> she held her head between her hands. There is nothing so extraordinary in this case, as it regards the mere repetition of sounds in the *sensorium*, in consequence of a long-continued impression originally

made, but that<sup>12</sup> it should be carried to the extent of causing a nervous affection, terminating fatally, is what seems to render the case unique.—*Medical Gazette*.

<sup>1</sup> *Agée de.* <sup>2</sup> *Attended a ball = alla à un bal.* <sup>3</sup> *A l'occasion de.* <sup>4</sup> *Turn, in the village where she was born.* <sup>5</sup> *It so happened = il se trouva.* <sup>6</sup> See Ex. VII. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part II. <sup>7</sup> *Whether . . . or = soit que . . . ou que*, with the Subjunctive. <sup>8</sup> See Ex. XX. Note <sup>8</sup>, Part III. <sup>9</sup> *To indulge in = se livrer à.* <sup>10</sup> See Ex. XI. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part II. <sup>11</sup> *As she held her head between her hands = en se tenant la tête entre les mains.* See Ex. LXXVIII. Note <sup>7</sup>, Part I., and Ex. VI. Note <sup>11</sup>, Part II. <sup>12</sup> *But that it should be carried to the extent of = mais que cela soit allé jusqu'à* (followed by the infinitive).

### XXXVI.—A MAIDEN LADY'S WILL.

A maiden lady, aged fifty-seven, died at Horsham,—of<sup>1</sup> good property. For thirty years she had been a recluse. In 1790 she built<sup>2</sup> a neat and elegant house for herself, and furnished it, but never occupied it. She lived in a small apartment contiguous, from which there was a communication, and would<sup>3</sup> often walk through the uninhabited rooms to inspect the furniture. It is said that she never saw the front of this house. She had all sorts of animals, and used to play a hand-organ to them,—dogs, cats, monkeys, guinea-pigs, hares, rabbits, squirrels, peacocks, doves, parrots, &c., and she left fifteen pounds a<sup>4</sup> year to a person to “feed and take care of them for and during their natural lives.” By her will her body was to be kept one month, and longer unless<sup>5</sup> there were symptoms of putrefaction. These however were so decided<sup>6</sup> that between thirty and forty pounds were expended upon it<sup>7</sup> in spirits of wine to keep it in preservation for the appointed<sup>8</sup> term. By her express direction it was first inclosed in a shell, then in a leaden coffin, thirdly in a coffin of oak; and lastly, the whole was let down into a stone coffin of the best Portland stone: the mason, according to her will, being to choose either that material or black marble, which ever

he believed to be most durable. Silvered breast-plate and ornaments were on the oaken coffin, and on the lid of the stone she appointed<sup>9</sup> her name, age, and the day of her death to be cut in letters each three-quarters of an inch deep.<sup>10</sup>—SOUTHEY'S *Common-place Book*.

<sup>1</sup> *Of good property = laissant une fortune assez considérable.*

<sup>2</sup> *She built for herself = elle se fit bâtir.* The verb *faire* is used because *she* did not build the house, she made some one build it; she caused it to be built. <sup>3</sup> See Ex. XI. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part II. <sup>4</sup> *A year = par an.* <sup>5</sup> See Ex. XXIV. Note <sup>5</sup>, Part III. <sup>6</sup> *Decided = prononcés.* <sup>7</sup> Turn, upon the corpse; and see what is said in Ex. XXVIII. Note <sup>10</sup>, Part I. <sup>8</sup> *Appointed term = temps voulu, terme fixé.* <sup>9</sup> *She appointed her name . . . to be cut . . . = elle désira . . . qu'on sculptât or gravât.* <sup>10</sup> *Three quarters of an inch deep = de trois-quarts de ponce de profondeur.*

### XXXVII.—PALEY AT CAMBRIDGE.

When Paley first<sup>1</sup> went to Cambridge, he fell into a society of young men far richer than himself, to whom his talents and conviviality made<sup>2</sup> him an acceptable companion, and he was<sup>3</sup> in a fair way for ruin. One morning one of these comrades came into his bedroom before he was up,<sup>4</sup> and he, as usual, thought it was to propose some plan of pleasure for the day. His friend, however, said: "Paley, I have<sup>5</sup> not slept a wink this night for thinking of you. I am, as you know, heir to such a fortune that whether<sup>6</sup> I ever look in a book at Cambridge or not, it does not signify a farthing. But this is not the case with you, you have only your abilities to look to,<sup>7</sup> and no man has better,<sup>8</sup> if you do<sup>9</sup> but make a proper use of them. But if you go on this<sup>10</sup> way you are ruined; and from this time forward<sup>11</sup> I am determined not to associate with you, for your own sake. You know I like your company, and it is a great sacrifice to give it up, but give it up I will, as a matter of conscience." Paley lay in bed<sup>12</sup> the whole day,<sup>13</sup> ruminating upon this.<sup>14</sup> In the evening he rose and

took his tea, ordered his bedmaker to make his fire and call him at five in the morning; and from that day forward<sup>15</sup> rose always at that hour; went out first wrangler and became the fortunate man he was.—SOUTHEY'S *Common-place Book*.

<sup>1</sup> *First went* = *entra*. <sup>2</sup> *To make*, before an adjective, meaning *to render*, is translated by *rendre*. <sup>3</sup> *And he was in a fair way for ruin* = *et il était sur la route qui mène à la ruine, et il était en train de se bien ruiner*. <sup>4</sup> *Before he was up* = *alors qu'il n'était pas encore levé*. <sup>5</sup> *I have not slept a wink this night* = *je n'ai pas fermé l'œil de la nuit*. <sup>6</sup> *Whether, si*, had better be translated by *que*. See Ex. XVII. Note <sup>6</sup>, Part I. As *que*, replacing *si*, would come after *que*, *that*, it would be better to turn the sentence in the following manner: *Whether I ever look in a book at Cambridge or not, it does not signify a farthing, for I am, as you know, heir to an immense fortune*. <sup>7</sup> *To look to* = *avoir recours à, mettre son espoir dans*. <sup>8</sup> *No man has better* = *il n'est pas d'homme qui ait un plus bel avenir devant soi*. <sup>9</sup> *If you do but make* = *si seulement vous faites*. <sup>10</sup> *This way* = *ainsi*. <sup>11</sup> *From this time forward* = *désormais, dorénavant*. <sup>12</sup> *To lie in bed* = *rester au lit*. <sup>13</sup> See Ex. XXIX. Note <sup>16</sup>, Part III. <sup>14</sup> *Upon this* = *là-dessus*. <sup>15</sup> *From that day forward* = *depuis ce jour-là*.

---

### XXXVIII.—PROTESTANT CHURCH ESTABLISHED BY ELIZABETH.

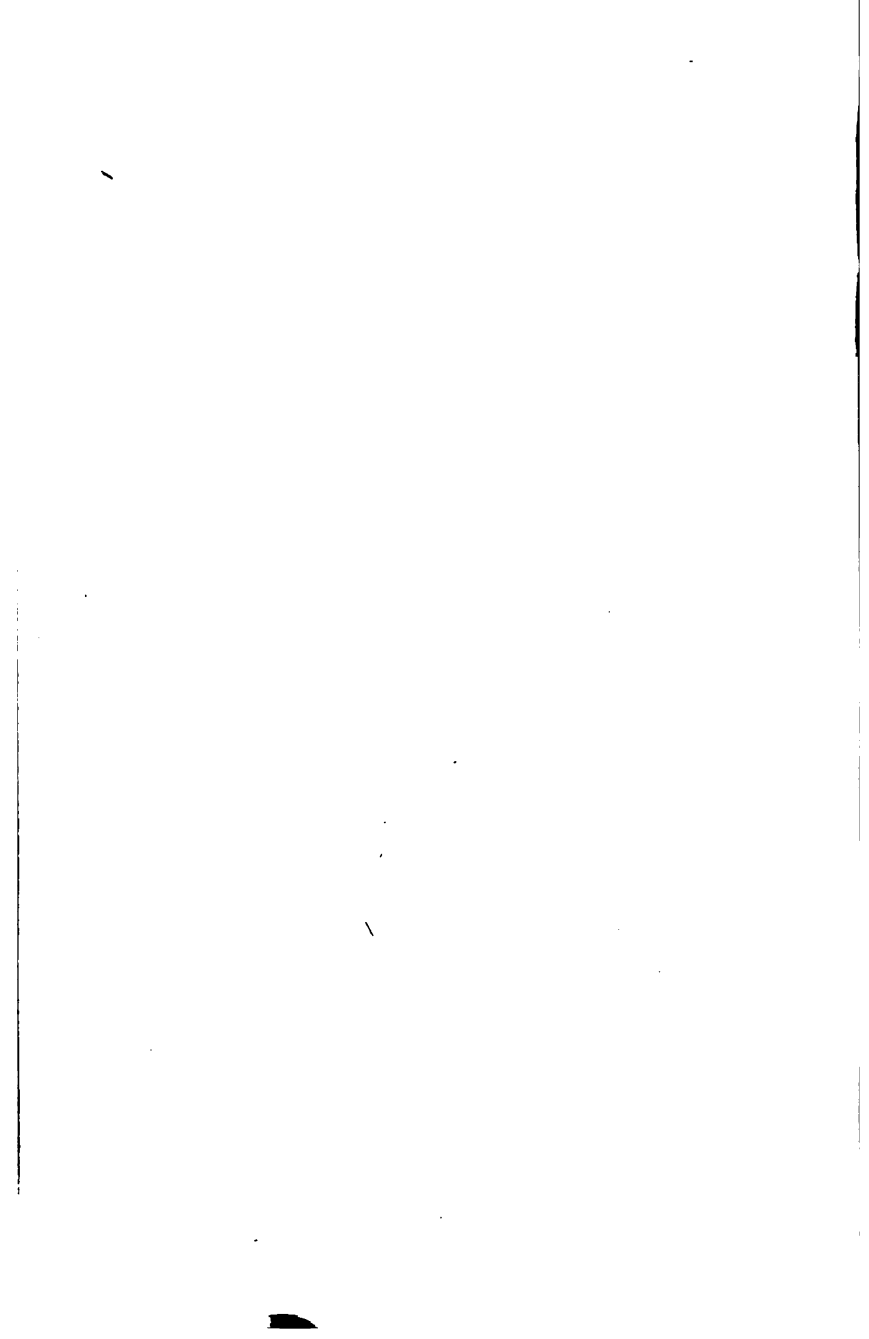
Henry VIII. had no sooner prevailed<sup>1</sup> on the Lords and Commons of England to renounce their spiritual obedience to the Roman<sup>2</sup> see, and to acknowledge his own supremacy, than, as a natural consequence, he proceeded to establish it in Ireland. In the former instance, many of his subjects, and even his clergy, were secretly attached to the principles of the Reformation; as many others were jealous of ecclesiastical wealth or eager to possess it. But in Ireland the reformers had made no progress; it had been among the effects of the pernicious separation of the two races, that the Irish priests had little intercourse with their bishops, who were nominated by the king, so that their synods are commonly recited to have been holden *inter*

*Anglicos*; the bishops themselves were sometimes intruded by violence, more often dispossessed by it; a total ignorance and neglect prevailed in the Church; and it is even found impossible to recover the succession of names in some sees. In a nation so ill-predisposed, it was difficult to bring about<sup>3</sup> a compliance with the king's demand of abjuring their religion; ignorant, but not indifferent, the clergy, with Cromer, the primate, at their head, and most of the Lords and Commons, in a parliament held at Dublin in 1536, resisted the act of supremacy; which was nevertheless ultimately carried by the force of government. Its enemies continued to withstand the new schemes of reformation, more especially in the next reign, when they went altogether to subvert the ancient faith. As it appeared dangerous to summon a parliament, the English liturgy was ordered by a royal proclamation; but Dowdall, the new primate, as stubborn an adherent of the Romish Church as his predecessor, with most of the other bishops and clergy, refused obedience; and the Reformation was never legally established in the short reign of Edward. His eldest sister's accession reversed of course what had been done, and restored tranquillity in ecclesiastical matters; for the Protestants were too few<sup>4</sup> to be worth persecution, nor<sup>5</sup> were even those molested who fled to Ireland from the fires of Smithfield.

Another scene of revolution ensued in a very few years. Elizabeth, having fixed the Protestant Church on a stable basis in England, sent over the Earl of Sussex to hold an Irish parliament in 1560. The disposition of such an assembly might be presumed hostile to the projected reformations; but, contrary to what had occurred on this side of the Channel, though the peers were almost uniformly for the old religion, a large majority of the bishops are said to have veered<sup>6</sup> round with the times, and supported, at least by conformity and acquiescence, the creed of the English court. In the House of Commons, pains had been taken to secure a majority; ten only out of twenty counties, which had at that time been formed, received the writ of summons;

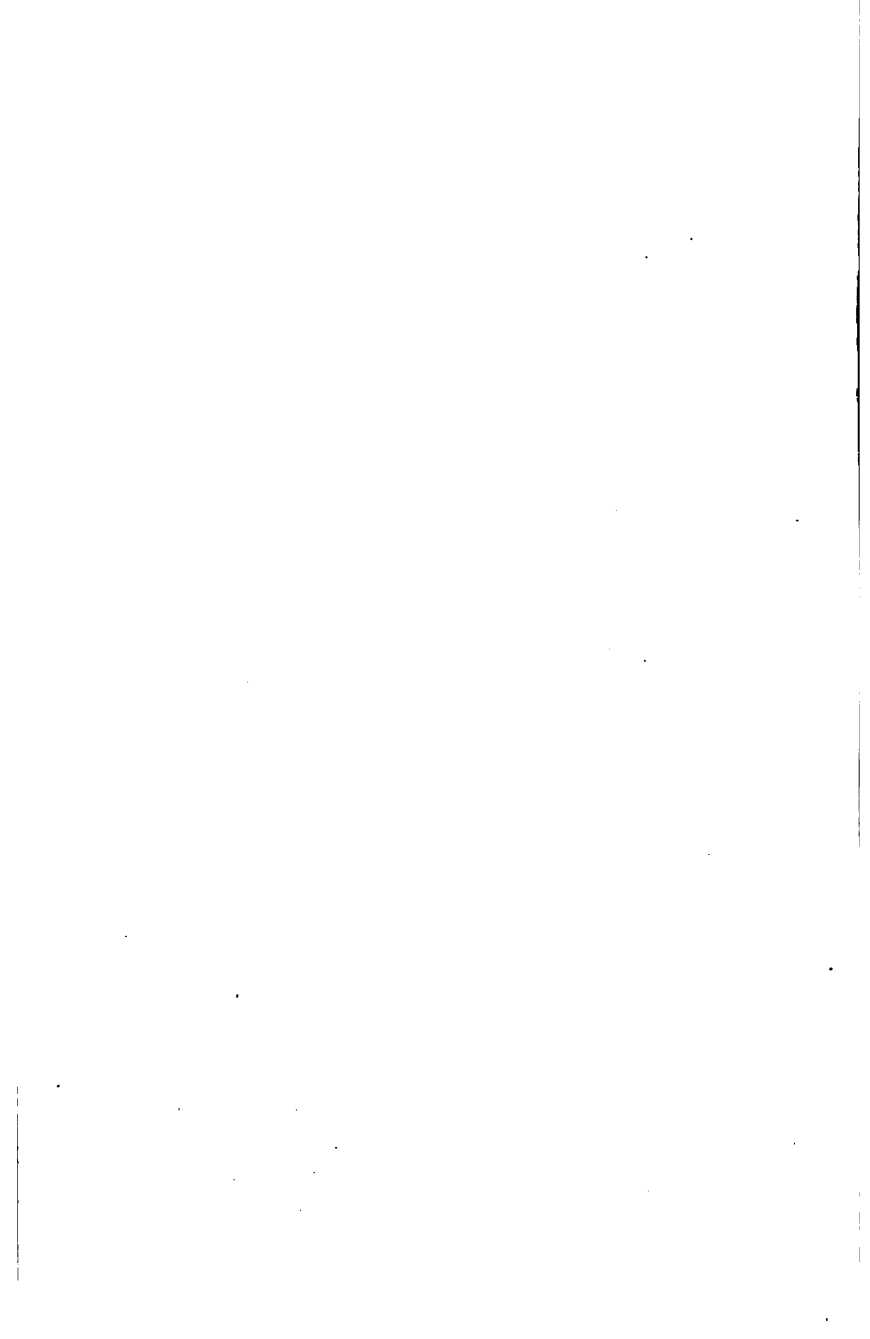
and the number of seventy-six representatives of the Anglo-Irish people was made up by the towns, many of them under the influence of the crown, some perhaps containing a mixture of Protestant religion. The English laws of supremacy and uniformity were enacted in nearly the same words; and thus the common prayer was at once set up<sup>7</sup> instead of the mass, but with a singular reservation, that in those parts of the country where the minister had no knowledge of the English language, he might<sup>8</sup> read the service in Latin. All subjects<sup>9</sup> were bound to attend the public worship of the church, and every other was interdicted.—HALLAM.

<sup>1</sup> *To prevail on* = *décider, persuader*. <sup>2</sup> *The Roman See* = *Le Saint-Siège*. <sup>3</sup> *It was difficult to bring about a compliance with the king's demands* = *il était difficile de l'amener à se conformer aux désirs du roi*. <sup>4</sup> *Too few* = *trop peu nombreux*. <sup>5</sup> See Ex. XIX. Note <sup>3</sup>, Part III. <sup>6</sup> *To veer round with the times* = *changer d'opinion avec le temps*. After the majority of the bishops, put the verb in the singular; make it agree with *majority*, not with *bishops*. Rule.—**When a collective is followed by *de* and a noun, the verb agrees with the word (the collective or the noun following) which attracts the attention most.** Ex.: *la MOITIÉ des passagers n'AVAIT pas la force de s'inquiéter du danger.* (*Voltaire*), but we shall write, *un grand nombre d'OISEAUX FAISAIENT résonner ces bocages de leurs doux chants* (*Fénélon*). <sup>7</sup> *Set up* = *établi, substitué à*. If you take the last word, *à* translates *instead of*. <sup>8</sup> See Ex. XXXIII. Note <sup>2</sup>, Part I. <sup>9</sup> *All subjects* = *tous les sujets du royaume*.



**ENGLISH-FRENCH VOCABULARY.**





## ENGLISH-FRENCH VOCABULARY.

### A.

**a, an** (indef. art.), un, une  
**abate, to** (trans. verb), abattre, diminuer  
**ability** (subs.), habileté (fem.)  
**able, to be, pouvoir** (irr. verb)  
**abominable** (adj.), abominable  
**about** (prep.), environ, au sujet de, touchant; *to be* —, faire; *to be to*, aller, être sur le point de  
**above** (prep.), au-dessus de; — (adv.), au-dessus  
**accept, to** (trans. verb), accepter  
**accident** (subs.), accident (mas.)  
**accordingly** (adv.), en conséquence  
**account** (subs.), récit (mas.); *on* — *of*, à cause de  
**acknowledge, to** (trans. verb), reconnaître (irr. verb)  
**act** (subs.), acte (mas.), action (fem.); *of a play*, acte (mas.)  
**act, to** (trans. verb), jouer  
**actor** (subs.), acteur (mas.)  
**actress** (subs.), actrice (fem.)  
**add, to** (trans. verb), ajouter  
**address, to** (trans. verb), parler à, s'adresser à  
**adjuration** (subs.), adjuration (fem.)  
**administrate, to** (trans. verb), administrer

**admire, to** (trans. verb), admirer  
**admit, to** (trans. verb), admettre (irr. verb)  
**adopt, to** (trans. verb), adopter  
**advantage** (subs.), avantage (mas.); *to take — of*, profiter de  
**affair** (subs.), affaire (fem.)  
**affinity** (subs.), affinité (fem.)  
**afraid, to be**, avoir peur  
**African** (adj.), africain  
**after** (prep.), après; — (conj.), après que (followed by the indicative)  
**afterwards** (adv.), ensuite, après  
**against** (prep.), contre  
**age** (subs.), âge (mas.)  
**ago** (adv.), il y a  
**agree, to** (intrans. verb), convenir (irr. verb)  
**air** (subs.), air (mas.)  
**akin, to**, parent de, ayant du rapport avec  
**alas** (interj.), hélas  
**alchemy** (subs.), alchimie (fem.)  
**alcoholic** (adj.), alcoolique  
**ale** (subs.), bière (fem.)  
**all** (adj.), tout; (plur.) tous, toutes  
**alliance** (subs.), parenté (fem.); *the honour of your* —, l'honneur d'être un de vos parents  
**allow, to** (trans. verb), reconnaître (irr. verb), avouer

**ally**, *to* (trans. verb), allier; *to be closely allied*, être proches parents  
**almost** (adv.), presque  
**alone** (adj.), seul; — (adv.), seulement  
**already** (adv.), déjà  
**also** (adv.), aussi  
**altar** (subs.), autel (mas.)  
**although** (conj.), quoique, bien que (followed by the subjunctive)  
**always** (adv.), toujours  
**amazement** (subs.), étonnement (mas.)  
**ambassador** (subs.), ambassadeur (mas.)  
**ambition** (subs.), ambition (fem.)  
**among** (prep.), parmi  
**ample** (adj.), large  
**Amsterdam**, Amsterdam  
**amusement** (subs.), amusement (mas.)  
**amusing** (adj.), amusant  
**ancient** (adj.), vieux, ancien  
**and** (conj.), et  
**anecdote** (subs.), anecdote (fem.)  
**angry** (adj.), fâché  
**announce**, *to* (trans. verb), annoncer  
**annoy**, *to* (trans. verb), ennuyer  
**anon** (adv.), à l'instant  
**another** (adj.), un autre  
**answer**, *to* (trans. verb), répondre à  
**antiquity** (subs.), antiquité (fem.)  
**any** (adj.), (affirm. sentence), tout; — (negat. sentence), pas de, aucun  
**apartment** (subs.), appartement (mas.)  
**apparent** (adj.), apparent  
**appeal** (subs.), appel (mas.)  
**appear**, *to* (intrans. verb), sembler, paraître (irr. verb)

**appearance** (subs.), apparition (fem.), apparence (fem.)  
**appease**, *to* (trans. verb), apaiser  
**appetite** (subs.), appétit (mas.)  
**apple** (subs.), pomme (fem.)  
**apply**, *to* (trans. verb), appliquer  
**appointed** (past part.), nommé, fixé; *he was — to lead*, qu'il était appelé à commander  
**appreciate**, *to* (trans. verb), apprécier  
**approach**, *to* (intrans. verb), s'approcher (de)  
**appropriate**, *to* (trans. verb), approprier, appliquer  
**archbishop** (subs.), archevêque (mas.)  
**arduous** (adj.), difficile, pénible  
**argumentative** (adj.), qui se plaît à argumenter  
**aright** (adv.), bien  
**arm** (subs.), bras (mas.)  
**army** (subs.), armée (fem.)  
**article** (subs.), article (mas.)  
**artist** (subs.), artiste  
**as** (conj.), comme; *as ... as*, aussi ... que  
**ashamed** (adj.), honteux  
**ask**, *to* (trans. verb), demander  
**aspect**, aspect (mas.), apparence (fem.)  
**asquint**, *to be*, regarder de côté  
**assemble**, *to* (trans. verb), assembler; — (intrans. verb), s'assembler  
**assistance** (subs.), assistance (fem.)  
**associate**, *to* (trans. verb), associer  
**assume**, *to* (trans. verb), prendre (irr. verb)  
**assure**, *to* (trans. verb), assurer  
**astonish**, *to* (trans. verb), étonner

*At last the day - is over et*  
*l'heure -*

**astonishment** (subs.), étonnement (mas.)  
**at** (prep.), à  
**attach, to** (trans. verb), attacher  
**attack, to** (trans. verb), attaquer  
**attempt** (trans. verb), essayer  
**audience** (subs.), auditoire (mas.)  
**Auld Reekie**, Edimbourg  
**austere** (adj.), austère  
**author** (subs.), auteur (mas.)  
**autumn** (subs.), automne (mas.)  
**avail one's self of, to**, profiter de  
**avoid, to** (trans. verb), éviter  
**awake, to** (trans. verb), éveiller;  
 — (intrans. verb), s'éveiller  
**aware, to be**, savoir (irr. verb)  
**awful** (adj.), horrible, énorme

B.

**back** (subs.), fond (mas.)  
**bacon** (subs.), lard (mas.)  
**bad** (adj.), mauvais  
**badly** (adv.), mal  
**balance** (subs.), balance (fem.)  
**bandy, to** (trans. verb), renvoyer  
**banker** (subs.), banquier (mas.)  
**banneret** (subs.), banneret (mas.)  
**barber** (subs.), barbier (mas.)  
**bard** (subs.), barde (mas.)  
**base** (adj.), vil, bas  
**battle** (subs.), bataille (fem.)  
**bawbee** (subs.), liard (mas.), sou (mas.)  
**bay** (subs.), baie (fem.)  
**be, to**, être  
**beak** (subs.), bec (mas.)  
**bear, to** (trans. verb), porter, supporter  
**beard** (subs.), barbe (fem.); — **to** (trans. verb), raser, faire la barbe à  
**beat, to** (trans. verb), battre  
**beautiful** (adj.), beau, belle

**because** (conj.), parceque  
**become, to** (intrans. verb), devenir (irr. verb)  
**bed** (subs.), lit (mas.)  
**bedside** (subs.), chevet (mas.)  
**bedtime** (subs.), l'heure de se coucher  
**before** (prep.), avant (*time, order*), devant (*place*); — (conj.), avant que (with the subjunctive); — (adv.), auparavant  
**beg, to** (trans. verb), prier, demander; **to solicit alms**, mendier  
**begin, to** (trans. verb), commencer  
**behind** (prep. and adv.), derrière  
**believe, to** (trans. verb), croire (irr. verb)  
**belong, to** (intrans. verb), appartenir (irr. verb); être  
**beloved** (past part.), aimé, chéri  
**beneath** (prep.), sous, au-dessous de; — (adv.), au-dessous  
**bench** (subs.), cour (fem.)  
**beseech, to** (trans. verb), supplier; **I — you**, je vous en supplie  
**best** (adj.), le meilleur; — (adv.), le mieux  
**bestow, to** (trans. verb), donner, accorder  
**better** (adj.), meilleur; — (adv.), mieux  
**between** (prep.), entre  
**beyond** (prep.), au-delà de, au-dessus de  
**biography** (subs.), biographie (fem.)  
**bird** (subs.), oiseau (mas.)  
**Birmingham**, Birmingham  
**birth** (subs.), naissance (fem.)  
**birthday** (subs.), fête (fem.)  
**bitter** (adj.), amer, acharné

**bless**, *to* (trans. verb), bénir  
**blind** (adj.), aveugle  
**blockhead** (subs.), lourdaud (mas.), buse (fem.)  
**bloody** (adj.), sanglant  
**blow** (subs.), coup (mas.)  
**blurt out**, *to* (trans. verb), laisser échapper  
**board** (subs.), bord (mas.); *on* —, à bord  
**body** (subs.), corps (mas.)  
**book** (subs.), livre (mas.)  
**bookseller** (subs.), libraire (mas.)  
**boot** (subs.), botte (fem.)  
**borrow**, *to* (trans. verb), emprunter  
**borrower** (subs.), emprunteur  
**both** (adj.), les deux, tous les deux; *both gentlemen*, ces deux messieurs  
**bottle** (subs.), bouteille (fem.)  
**bottom** (subs.), fond (mas.)  
**box** (subs.), boîte (fem.); *in a restaurant*, cabinet (mas.); *in a theatre*, loge (fem.); *letter* —, boîte aux lettres  
**bracken** (subs.), fougère (fem.)  
**bread** (subs.), pain (mas.)  
**break**, *to* (trans. verb), abattre  
**breast** (subs.), poitrine (fem.)  
**brightness** (subs.), éclat (mas.)  
**bring**, *to* (trans. verb), apporter, amener; *to — back*, rapporter, ramener  
**broom** (subs.), balai (mas.)  
**brother** (subs.), frère (mas.)  
**brow** (subs.), regard (mas.), sourcil (mas.)  
**brush** (subs.), brosse (fem.); *tooth* —, brosse à dents  
**build**, *to* (trans. verb), bâtir  
**burgomaster** (subs.), bourguemestre (mas.)  
**Burgundian** (adj.), bourguignon

**burial** (subs.), sépulture (fem.); *to receive Christian* —, être mis en terre sainte

**burn**, *to* (trans. verb), brûler

**busy** (adj.), occupé, actif

**but** (conj.), mais, seulement, ne ... que

**buy**, *to* (trans. verb), acheter

**by** (prep.), par, de

*business face = figure d'affaires*

**cabin** (subs.), cabine (fem.)

**call**, *to* (trans. verb), appeler; *to*

*— on*, se présenter chez; *to be called*, s'appeler

**canal** (subs.), canal (mas.)

**candle** (subs.), chandelle (fem.)

**capacity** (subs.), capacité (fem.)

**capital** (adj.), excellent

**captain** (subs.), capitaine (mas.)

**care** (subs.), soin (mas.); —, soucis (mas.)

**career** (subs.), carrière (fem.)

**carpenter** (subs.), charpentier (mas.)

**carry**, *to* (trans. verb), porter; *to — away*, emporter

**case** (subs.), cas (mas.), cause (fem.)

**caution** (subs.), avis (mas.)

**cavalier** (subs.), cavalier (mas.)

**cavalry** (subs.), cavalerie (fem.), soldats, troupes de cavalerie

**celebrated** (adj.), célèbre, fameux

**century** (subs.), siècle (mas.)

**certain** (adj.), certain

**chance** (subs.), hasard (mas.)

**change**, *to* (trans. verb), changer (de); — (subs.), changement

**chapel** (subs.), chapelle (fem.)

**characteristic** (subs.), trait caractéristique; — (adj.), caractéristique

**charge**, *to* (trans. verb), prendre (irr. verb)  
**cheap** (adj.), bon marché  
**cheaper**, meilleur marché  
**cheek** (subs.), joue (fem.)  
**chest** (subs.), coffre (mas.)  
**chief** (subs.), chef (mas.); — (adj.), principal  
**chieftain** (subs.), chef (mas.)  
**chiefly** (adv.), surtout  
**chimney** (subs.), cheminée (fem.)  
**China**, Chine (fem.)  
**choose**, *to* (trans. verb), choisir  
**Christian** (adj.), chrétien  
**church** (subs.), église (fem.)  
**citizen** (subs.), citoyen (mas.)  
**city** (subs.), cité (fem.), ville (fem.)  
**city-officer** (subs.), fonctionnaire civil  
**civil** (adj.), civil  
**claim**, *to* (trans. verb), demander, réclamer  
**clamorous** (adj.), bruyant  
**clear** (adj.), clair, limpide; *to* — *up* (weather), s'éclaircir  
**clergyman** (subs.), ministre, pasteur (mas.)  
**clerical** (adj.), clérical  
**clerk** (subs.), commis (mas.), clerc (mas.)  
**client** (subs.), client (mas.)  
**cloak** (subs.), manteau (mas.)  
**close** (prep.), tout près de; — (subs.), fin (fem.)  
**closely** (adv.), de près. See *ally*  
**clothe**, *to* (trans. verb), vêtir (irr. verb)  
**clouded** (past part.), obscurci  
**coffee-house** (subs.), café (mas.), restaurant (mas.)  
**coin** (subs.), pièce de monnaie (fem.)  
**cold** (subs.), froid (mas.); — (adj.), froid

**come**, *to* (intrans. verb), venir (irr. verb); *to* — *in*, entrer  
**comedy** (subs.), comédie (fem.);  
**comfort** (subs.), bien-être (mas.)  
**command**, *to* (trans. verb), commander  
**commander**, commandant, chef, général, capitaine  
**commensurate** (adj.), proportionné  
**commit**, *to* (trans. verb), commettre (irr. verb)  
**common** (subs.), plaine (fem.); — (adj.), commun  
**Commons (House of)**, Chambre des Communes (fem.)  
**compact** (subs.), compacte (mas.); *family* —, lien de famille (mas.)  
**companion** (subs.), compagnon (mas.), compagne (fem.)  
**company** (subs.), compagnie (fem.)  
**complain**, *to* (intrans. verb), se plaindre (irr. verb)  
**complaint** (subs.), mal (mas.), indisposition (fem.)  
**completely** (adv.), complètement  
**compliment** (subs.), compliment (mas.)  
**concert** (subs.), concert (mas.)  
**conclude**, *to* (intrans. verb), conclure (irr. verb)  
**condemn**, *to* (trans. verb), condamner  
**condition** (subs.), condition (fem.)  
**conduct**, *to* (trans. verb), conduire (irr. verb)  
**confessor** (subs.), confesseur (mas.)  
**confidence** (subs.), confiance (fem.), confidence (fem.)  
**conflagration** (subs.), incendie (mas.)

**confusion** (subs.), confusion (fem.)  
**consanguinity** (subs.), parenté (fem.)  
**consider**, *to* (trans. verb), considérer, songer à  
**considerable** (adj.), considérable  
**constantly** (adv.), constamment  
**consternation** (subs.), consternation (fem.)  
**consume**, *to* (trans. verb), consumer, consommer  
**contact** (subs.), contact (mas.)  
**contempt** (subs.), mépris (mas.)  
**content**, *to* (trans. verb), satisfaire (irr. verb), contenter  
**continually** (adv.), continuellement  
**conversation** (subs.), conversation (fem.)  
**convince**, *to* (trans. verb), convaincre (irr. verb)  
**coolness** (subs.), froideur (fem.)  
**corn** (subs.), blé (mas.)  
**corner** (subs.), coin (mas.)  
**corpse** (subs.), corps (mas.), cadavre (mas.)  
**corpulency** (subs.), corpulence (fem.)  
**correct**, *to* (trans. verb), corriger  
**correspondent** (subs.), correspondant (mas.)  
**corrupt**, *to* (trans. verb), corrompre  
**council** (subs.), conseil (mas.), membres du conseil  
**counsel** (subs.), avocat (mas.)  
**counsellor** (subs.), conseiller (mas.)  
**count** (subs.), comte (mas.)  
**countess** (subs.), comtesse (fem.)  
**country** (subs.), pays (mas.), campagne (fem.), province (fem.)  
**country-house**, maison de campagne

**courage** (subs.), courage (mas.)  
**court** (subs.), cour (fem.)  
**cover**, *to* (trans. verb), couvrir (irr. verb)  
**creature** (subs.), créature (fem.)  
**creditor** (subs.), créancier (mas.)  
**crime** (subs.), crime (mas.)  
**criminal** (adj.), criminel  
**crowd**, *to* (intrans. verb), se presser en foule  
**crown** (subs.), couronne (fem.); *to succeed to a —*, monter sur le trône  
**cultivation** (subs.), culture (fem.)  
**cunning** (subs.), finesse (fem.)  
**cup** (subs.), coupe (fem.), tasse (fem.)  
**curious** (adj.), curieux  
**curse** (subs.), malédiction (fem.); *— to* (trans. verb), maudire (irr. verb)  
**curtain** (subs.), rideau (mas.), toile (fem.)  
**curtsey** (subs.), révérence (fem.)  
**curve**, *to* (trans. verb), courber  
**cushion** (subs.), coussin (mas.)  
**cut**, *to* (trans. verb), couper; *they are cutting out the third act*, ils sont en train de couper le troisième acte. *Etre en train de expresse to be in the act of doing*

## D.

**daily** (adv.), journellement, tous les jours  
**danger** (subs.), danger (mas.)  
**dangerous** (adj.), dangereux  
**dark** (subs.), obscurité (fem.)  
**day** (subs.), jour (mas.), journée (fem.); *in their —*, de leur temps.  
**dear** (adj.), cher  
**death** (subs.), mort (fem.)

**debate** (subs.), débat (mas.), discussion (fem.)

**debt** (subs.), dette (fem.); *to be in — for*, devoir.

**deceive**, *to* (trans. verb), tromper

**declare**, *to* (trans. verb), déclarer

**deeply** (adv.), profondément

**defence** (subs.), protection (fem.), défense (fem.)

**definition** (subs.), définition (fem.)

**degree** (subs.), degré (mas.)

**delay** (subs.), retard (mas.)

**delight**, *to* (trans. verb), délecter, charmer

**deliver**, *to* (trans. verb), délivrer

**demand**, *to* (trans. verb), demander, exiger

**dentist** (subs.) dentiste (mas.)

**depend on**, *to* (trans. verb), compter sur, dépendre de

**deserve**, *to* (trans. verb), mériter

\* **design** (subs.), dessein (mas.)

**desire**, *to* (trans. verb), désirer

**desist**, *to* (intrans. verb), cesser, se désister

**destination** (subs.), destination (fem.)

**destine**, *to* (trans. verb), destiner

**destiny** (subs.), destin (mas.), destinée (fem.)

**destitute** (adj.), privé, dénué, dépourvu

**determine**, *to* (trans. verb), décider; — (intrans. verb), se décider

**detestation** (subs.); exécution (fem.), horreur (fem.)

**develop**, *to* (trans. verb), développer

**devote**, *to* (trans. verb), dévouer

**devotion** (subs.), dévotion (fem.)

**difference** (subs.), différence (fem.)

**difficult** (adj.), difficile

**dig**, *to* (trans. verb), creuser

**dignity** (subs.), dignité (fem.)

**dinner** (subs.), dîner (mas.)

**directly** (adv.), à l'instant, tout de suite

**disappear** (intrans. verb), disparaître (irr. verb)

**disappoint**, *to* (trans. verb), désappointer

**disaster** (subs.), désastre (mas.)

**discountess** (subs.), comtesse (fem.). This word is not French. Use it, however, to keep the joke.

**discover**, *to* (trans. verb), découvrir (irr. verb)

**discuss**, *to* (trans. verb), discuter

**disease** (subs.), maladie (fem.)

**dishonourable** (adj.), déshonorant

**displease**, *to* (trans. verb), déplaire à (irr. verb)

**displeasure** (subs.), déplaisir (mas.), mécontentement (mas.)

**dissatisfied** (adj.), mécontent

**dissenting** (adj.), de l'église dissidente

**dissimulation** (subs.), dissimulation (fem.)

**distance** (subs.), distance (fem.)

**distant** (adj.), éloigné

**distinction** (subs.), distinction (fem.)

**distinctly** (adv.), distinctement

**disturb** (subs.), celui qui trouble

**do**, *to* (trans. verb), faire (irr. verb). Not to be translated when used in an interrogative or a negative sentence

**doctor** (subs.), docteur (mas.)

**doctrine** (subs.), doctrine (fem.)

**theory** (fem.)

\* *designing - Composition*



**domestic** (adj.), domestique  
**door** (subs.), porte (fem.)  
**doubting** (pres. part.), exprimant  
 ses doutes  
**dozen** (subs.), douzaine (fem.)  
**drawer** (subs.), tiroir (mas.)  
**dreadful** (adj.), terrible  
**drink, to** (trans. verb), boire (irr.  
 verb)  
**driver** (subs.), cocher (mas.),  
 conducteur (mas.)  
**drowned, to be or to get, se**  
 noyer.  
**drubbing** (subs.), volée de  
 coups de bâton (fem.)  
**Dublin** (subs.), Dublin  
**duke** (subs.), duc (mas.)  
**during** (prep.), pendant

## E.

**each** (adj.), chaque, chacun;  
 — *other*, l'un l'autre.  
**eagle** (subs.), aigle (mas.)  
**east** (subs.), est (mas.)  
**easy** (adj.), facile  
**eat, to** (trans. verb), manger  
**editor** (subs.), rédacteur en chef  
**effect** (subs.), effet (mas.)  
**effusiveness** (subs.), effusion  
 (fem.), épanchement (mas.)  
**eighty** (adj.), quatre-vingts  
**elderly** (adj.), âgé, d'un certain  
 âge.  
**elector** (subs.), électeur (mas.)  
**elegant** (adj.), élégant  
**eleven** (adj.), onze  
**elixir** (subs.), élixir (mas.)  
**elsewhere** (adv.), ailleurs  
**embrace** (subs.), baiser (mas.)  
**embroider, to** (trans. verb)  
 broder  
**emergency** (subs.), circonstance,  
 critique, grave (fem.)  
**emotion** (subs.), émotion (fem.)

**emperor** (subs.), empereur  
 (mas.)  
**empress** (subs.), impératrice  
 (fem.)  
**enact, to** (trans. verb), jouer le  
 rôle de  
**end** (subs.), fin (fem.)  
**enemy** (subs.), ennemi (mas.)  
**engaged in** (past part.), occupé  
 à  
**engagement** (subs.), engagement  
 (mas.)  
**England** (subs.), Angleterre  
 (fem.)  
**English** (adj.), anglais; (noun  
 meaning "the English lan-  
 guage"), l'anglais (mas.)  
**enjoin, to** (trans. verb), enjoindre  
 (irr. verb)  
**enjoy, to** (trans. verb), jouir de  
**enmity** (subs.), inimitié (fem.)  
**enormous** (adj.), énorme  
**enough** (adv.), assez  
**enter, to** (intrans. verb), entrer  
 (dans)  
**enterprise** (subs.), entreprise  
 (fem.)  
**enterprising** (adv.), entrepren-  
 ant  
**entertaining** (adj.), intéressant  
**enthusiastic** (adj.), enthousi-  
 aste  
**entirely** (adv.) entièrement  
**epitaph** (subs.), épitaphe (fem.)  
**equally** (adv.), également  
**error** (subs.), erreur (fem.)  
**escape** (subs.), subterfuge  
 (mas.); — *to* (intrans. verb),  
 s'échapper  
**essential** (adj.) essentiel, intéres-  
 sant  
**establishment** (subs.), établis-  
 sement (mas.)  
**estimate, to** (trans. verb),  
 estimer  
**even** (adv.), même

**evening** (subs.), soir (mas.),  
soirée (fem.)  
**event** (subs.), événement (mas.)  
**ever** (adv.), jamais, toujours.  
**every** (adj.), chaque, tous les,  
toutes les  
**every body**, tout le monde  
**evidence** (subs.), ~~évidence~~  
(fem.); (jur.) déposition (fem.)  
**evident** (adj.), évident  
**exact** (adj.), exact  
**exactly** (adv.), exactement, pré-  
cisément  
**examination** (subs.), examen  
(mas.)  
**except** (prep.), excepté  
**excite, to** (trans. verb), exciter  
**exclaim, to** (intrans. verb),  
s'écrier  
**excuse, to** (trans. verb), excuser  
**execration** (subs.), horreur  
(fem.)  
**exert, to** (trans. verb), déployer  
**exhaust, to** (trans. verb),  
épuiser  
**expect, to** (trans. verb), s'atten-  
dre à, espérer  
**experienced** (adj.), expéri-  
menté  
**explain, to** (trans. verb), ex-  
pliquer  
**expose, to** (trans. verb), ex-  
poser  
**express, to** (trans. verb), ex-  
primer  
**expression** (subs.), expression  
(fem.)  
**external** (adj.), extérieur  
**extraordinary** (adj.), extra-  
ordinaire  
**extravagance** (subs.), extrava-  
gance (fem.)  
**extremely** (adv.), extrêmement  
**extricate one's self, to** (ref.  
verb), se tirer d'affaire, se  
tirer d'embarras

**eye** (subs.), œil (mas.), yeux  
(plur.)

F.

**face** (subs.), figure (fem.)  
visage (mas.)  
**fact** (subs.), fait (mas.)  
**faculty** (subs.), faculté (fem.)  
**fail to, to** (intrans. verb),  
manquer de  
**fair** (adj.), beau (fem.) belle  
**fairly** (adv.), justement  
**faithful** (adj.), fidèle  
**fall, to** (intrans. verb), tomber  
(used with être)  
**falsely** (adv.), faussement  
**family** (subs.), famille (fem.)  
**famous** (adj.), fameux  
**far** (adv.), loin  
**farmer** (subs.), fermier (mas.)  
**fashionable** (adj.) à la mode  
**fast** (adv.), vite  
**father** (subs.), père (mas.)  
**fatigue** (subs.), fatigue (fem.)  
**favour** (subs.), faveur (fem.)  
**favourite** (subs. and adj.),  
favori, (fem.) favorite  
**fear** (subs.), crainte (fem.),  
peur (fem.); — *to* (trans.  
verb), craindre (irr. verb)  
**feature** (subs.), trait (mas.)  
**feeble** (adj.), faible  
**feel, to** (trans. verb), sentir  
(irr. verb); (intrans. verb), se  
sentir  
**feeling** (subs.), sentiment  
(mas.)  
**felicity** (subs.), choix heureux  
(mas.)  
**fellow** (subs.), individu (mas.)  
**fertility** (subs.), fécondité (fem.);  
fertilité (fem.)  
**festival** (subs.), fête (fem.)

**few** (adj.), peu de ; *a* —, quelques  
**field** (subs.), champ (mas.) ;  
 champ de bataille  
**fifteen** (adj.), quinze  
**fifteenth** (adj.), quinzième.  
**fifty** (adj.), cinquante  
**fight** (subs.), combat (mas.) ; —  
*to* (intrans. verb), se battre  
 (trans. verb) ; *to* — *a battle*,  
 livrer bataille  
**figure** (subs.), tournure (fem.),  
 taille (fem.), figure (fem.)  
**fill, to** (trans. verb) remplir  
**financier** (subs.), financier  
 (mas.)  
**find, to** (trans. verb) trouver  
**finish, to** (trans. verb) finir,  
 terminer  
**finished** (past part.), achevé,  
 accompli  
**fire** (subs.), feu (mas.), incendie  
 (mas.)  
**firm** (adj.), ferme  
**first** (adv.), d'abord ; — (adj.),  
 premier  
**fish** (subs.), poisson (mas.)  
**fisherman** (subs.), pêcheur  
 (mas.)  
**five** (adj.), cinq  
**flatterer** (subs.), flatteur (mas.)  
**Fleming** (subs.), Flamand (mas.) ;  
*we Flemings*, Nous autres  
 Flamands  
**Flemish** (adj.), flamand ; — *his-*  
*tory*, histoire des Flandres  
**float, to** (intrans. verb), flotter  
**flourish, to** (intrans. verb)  
 fleurir  
**fly, to** (intrans. verb) voler  
**foe** (subs.), ennemi (mas.)  
**fold, to** (trans. verb), plier  
**follow, to** (trans. verb), suivre  
 (irr. verb)  
**fond of, to be**, aimer  
**fool** (subs.), fou, folle ; sot,  
 sotté

**for** (prep.), pour ; — (conj.), car  
**force, to** (trans. verb), forcer  
**forehead** (subs.), front (mas.)  
**foreign** (adj.), étranger  
**forget, to** (trans. verb), oublier  
**forgetfulness** (subs.), oubli  
 (mas.) ; négligence (fem.)  
**forgive, to** (trans. verb), par-  
 donner  
**forgiveness** (subs.), pardon  
 (mas.)  
**form** (subs.), forme (fem.) ;  
*poetic* —, poésie (fem.), vers  
 (mas.)  
**former** (adj.), premier ; *the* —  
 celui-là  
**formidable** (adj.), formidable  
**fortitude** (subs.), force d'âme  
 (fem.)  
**fortune** (subs.), fortune (fem.)  
**four** (adj.), quatre  
**frame** (subs.), corps (mas.)  
**free** (adj.), libre  
**French** (adj.), français ; — *king*,  
 roi de France  
**French** (noun meaning "the  
 French language"), le français  
 (mas.)  
**Frenchman** (subs.), Français  
 (mas.)  
**frequent, to** (trans. verb),  
 fréquenter  
**friend** (subs.), ami (mas.)  
**friendship** (subs.), amitié (fem.)  
**frigate** (subs.), frégate (fem.)  
**frivolous** (adj.), frivole  
**from** (prep.), de  
**front** (subs.), devant (mas.) ;  
*in* —, sur le devant  
**frosty** (adj.), glacial, glacé  
**frown** (subs.), froncement des  
 sourcils (mas.) ; *with a* —, en  
 fronçant le sourcil  
**full** (adj.), plein  
**fully**, complètement  
**fulvous** (adj.), jaune fauve

**fûneral** (subs.), enterrement (mas.)  
**fur** (subs.), fourrure (fem.)  
**furnish, to** (trans. verb), pourvoir (irr. verb)  
**furrow, to** (trans. verb), sillonner de rides, rider

G.

**gable** (subs.), pignon (mas.)  
**gain, to** (trans. verb), gagner  
**gate** (subs.), porte (fem.)  
**general** (subs.), général (mas.); — (adj.), général  
**generosity** (subs.), générosité (fem.)  
**gentle** (adj.), aimable, gracieux  
**gentleman** (subs.), monsieur; (plur.), messieurs  
**Germany** (subs.), Allemagne (fem.)  
**get out, to** (intrans. verb), sortir (irr. verb)  
**Ghent** (subs.), Gand  
**giggle, to** (intrans. verb), ricaner  
**gin** (subs.), genièvre (mas.); (keep gin in the 50th piece)  
**girl** (subs.), fille (fem.)  
**give, to** (trans. verb), donner  
**glad** (adj.), heureux  
**Glasgow** (subs.), Glasgow  
**glass** (subs.), verre (mas.)  
**glide about, to** (intrans. verb), passer rapidement  
**go, to** (intrans. verb), aller (irr. verb); *to — in, into*, entrer dans  
**gold** (subs.), or (mas.)  
**golden** (adj.), d'or  
**good** (adj.), bon, bonne.  
**goose** (subs.), oie (fem.)  
**government** (subs.), gouvernement (mas.)  
**grace** (subs.), grâce (fem.)

**gracious** (adj.), gracieux; *good —, sapristi*  
**grave** (subs.), fosse (fem.)  
**gravity** (subs.), gravité (fem.), sérieux (mas.)  
**great** (adj.), grand  
**greatness** (subs.), grandeur (fem.)  
**green** (adj.), vert  
**grieve, to** (trans. verb), affliger  
**grimace** (subs.), grimace (fem.)  
**ground** (subs.), terre (fem.), terrain (mas.)  
**guest** (subs.), hôte (mas.)

H.

**habit** (subs.), habitude (fem.); *to be in the — of*, avoir l'habitude de  
**hairdresser** (subs.), coiffeur (mas.)  
**half** (subs.), moitié (fem.); — (adj.), demi; — (adv.), à moitié  
**hand** (subs.), main (fem.); — *to* (trans. verb), donner; présenter  
**handsome** (adj.), beau, belle  
**hang to** (trans. verb), pendre; *to — up*, (trans. verb) suspendre  
**happen, to** (intrans. verb), arriver  
**happily** (adv.), heureusement  
**happy** (adj.), heureux  
**harm** (subs.), mal (mas.); *no — done*, aucun mal de fait  
**harmony** (subs.), harmonie (fem.)  
**hastily** (adv.), précipitamment  
**have, to** (trans. verb), avoir, *to — just*, venir de (irr. verb)  
**head** (subs.), tête (fem.)  
**health** (subs.), santé (fem.)

*A hundred pounds is one hundred and pence  
 Cent livres de pence se dit à l'infinitif  
 Sa cent pence*

**healthy** (adj.), sain  
**hear, to** (trans. verb), entendre  
**hearse** (subs.), corbillard (mas.)  
**heart** (subs.), cœur (mas.)  
**heat** (subs.), chaleur (fem.)  
**heaven** (subs.), ciel; (plur.), cieux  
**heavy** (adj.), lourd  
**help, to** (trans. verb), aider; *to — one's self to*, se servir  
**her** (poss. adj.), son, sa, ses (agrees with the following noun); — (pers. pron.), la (conjunctively); elle (disjunctively)  
**here** (adv.), ici  
**high** (adj.), haut  
**him** (pers. pron.), le (conjunctively); lui (disjunctively)  
**hire, to** (trans. verb) louer  
**his** (poss. adj.), son, sa, ses (agrees with the following noun); — (poss. pron.), le sien, la sienne, les siens, les siennes (agrees with the noun it stands for)  
**hiss, to** (trans. verb), siffler  
**history** (subs.), histoire (fem.)  
**hit, to** (trans. verb), heurter  
**hog** (subs.), porc (mas.)  
**hold, to** (trans. verb), tenir (irr. verb), occuper; *to — out* (trans. verb), offrir (irr. verb)  
**hole** (subs.), trou (mas.)  
**homage** (subs.), hommage (mas.); *to pay —*, rendre hommage  
**home** (subs.), maison (fem.), habitation (fem.)  
**honour** (subs.), honneur (mas.); — *to* (trans. verb), honorer  
**honourable** (adj.), honorable  
**hope, to** (intrans. verb) espérer (referring to future time), aimer à croire, à penser (referring to present or past time)  
**hopefully** (adv.), avec espoir

**horseman** (subs.), cavalier (mas.)  
**host** (subs.), hôte (mas.)  
**hotel** (subs.), hôtel (mas.)  
**hour** (subs.), heure (fem.)  
**house** (subs.), maison (fem.)  
**housemaid** (subs.), servante (fem.)  
**housewife** (subs.), ménagère (fem.)  
**how** (adv.), comment  
**however** (adv.), cependant  
**humble** (adj.), humble  
**humbly** (adv.), humblement  
**humour** (subs.), esprit (mas.), gaieté (fem.)  
**humoured** (*good*) (adj.), de bonne humeur  
**hundred** (adj.), cent  
**hydrogin** (keep the same word in the 50th exercise)  
**hypocrite** (subs.); hypocrite (mas.)

## I.

**I** (pers. pron.), je (conjunctively); moi (disjunctively)  
**iced** (adj.), glacial  
**idiot** (subs.), idiot (mas.)  
**idle** (adj.), paresseux, oisif; *of — credulity*, de pure imagination  
**ignorant** (adj.), ignorant  
**ill** (adj.), malade  
**imitation** (subs.), imitation (fem.)  
**immediately** (adv.), immédiatement, à l'instant, sur-le-champ  
**immense** (adj.), énorme, immense  
**immortal** (adj.), immortel  
**immortality** (subs.), immortalité (fem.)

**impertinent** (adj.), impertinent  
**importance** (subs.), importance (fem.)  
**impossible** (adj.), impossible  
**impostor** (subs.), imposteur (mas.), charlatan (mas.)  
**improve, to** (trans. verb), améliorer  
**impudent** (adj.), impudent  
**in** (prep.), dans (determ.), en  
**inattentive** (adj.), inattentif  
**incessant** (adj.), continuuel, incessant  
**incident** (subs.), incident (mas.)  
**inclined, to** (adj.), porté à  
**inconvenience** (subs.), inconvénient (mas.)  
**indeed** (adv.), vraiment  
**indicate, to** (trans. verb), indiquer  
**individual** (subs.), individu (mas.)  
**indolent** (adj.), indolent  
**induce, to** (trans. verb), engager, induire (irr. verb)  
**inducement** (subs.), motif (mas.)  
**indulgence** (subs.), indulgence (fem.)  
**industry** (subs.), activité (fem.)  
**inevitable** (adj.), inévitable  
**infancy** (subs.), enfance (fem.)  
**infantry** (subs.), infanterie (fem.), soldats, troupes d'infanterie  
**inform, to** (trans. verb), informer  
**information** (subs.), renseignement (mas.)  
**inhabitant** (subs.), habitant (mas.)  
**inheritance** (subs.) héritage (mas.)  
**injured, to be**, souffrir (irr. verb)  
**inn** (subs.), taverne (fem.)  
**inquire, to** (trans. verb), demander; — *about, to*, s'informer de

**insist, to** (intrans. verb), insister  
**insolence** (subs.), insolence (fem.)  
**inspire, to** (trans. verb), inspirer  
**instance** (subs.), exemple (mas.), assertion (fem.)  
**instruction** (subs.), instruction (fem.)  
**insurgent** (subs.), insurgé (mas.)  
**integrity** (subs.), intégrité (fem.)  
**intend, to** (intrans. verb), avoir l'intention de  
**intercept, to** (trans. verb), arrêter  
**interrupt, to** (trans. verb), interrompre  
**invaluable** (adj.), inappréciable  
**invention** (subs.), génie d'invention (mas.)  
**inventor** (subs.), inventeur (mas.)  
**invite, to** (trans. verb), inviter  
**it** (pers. pron.), il, ce (nomin.); le, la (accus.)  
**Italy** (subs.), Italie (fem.)  
**item** (subs.), article (mas.)

J.

**John** (subs.), Jean  
**journalist** (subs.), journaliste (mas.)  
**journey** (subs.), voyage (mas.)  
**judge** (subs.), juge (mas.)  
**jury** (subs.), jury (mas.)  
**jurymen** (subs.), juré (mas.)  
**just** (adv.), juste, justement  
**justice** (subs.), justice (fem.)

K.

**keenness** (sub.), finesse (fem.)  
**keep, to** (trans. verb), garder, tenir (irr. verb)

**key** (subs.), clef (fem.)  
**kind** (adj.), bon, aimable  
**kindness** (subs.), bonté (fem.),  
 amabilité (fem.)  
**king** (subs.), roi (mas.)  
**kingdom** (subs.), royaume (mas.)  
**kirk** (subs.), église (fem.)  
**kitchen** (subs.), cuisine (fem.)  
**knot** (subs.), groupe (mas.)  
**know**, *to* (trans. verb), con-  
 naître (irr. verb), savoir (irr.  
 verb)  
**knowledge** (subs.), connaissance  
 (fem.), éducation (fem.)

## L.

**labour** (subs.), travail (mas.),  
 peine (fem.); — *to* (intrans.  
 verb), travailler  
**lady** (subs.), dame (fem.)  
**land** (subs.), terre (fem.), pays  
 (mas.); *native* —, patrie (fem.)  
**language** (subs.), langue (fem.),  
 langage (mas.)  
**large** (adj.), grand, gros, nom-  
 breux  
**last** (adj.), dernier; — *week*, la  
 semaine dernière; *at* —, (adv.),  
 enfin; *to* — (intrans. verb),  
 durer  
**late** (adj.), en retard; — (ex), feu;  
 (adv.), tard  
**latter** (adj.), dernier; *the* —,  
 celui-ci, celle-ci, ceux-ci,  
 celles-ci  
**laugh**, *to* (intrans. verb), rire  
 (irr. verb)  
**laughter** (subs.), rire (mas.),  
 plaisir (mas.)  
**law** (subs.), loi (fem.); *court of*  
 —, cour de justice; *law* (jus.),  
 droit (mas.); *to study* —, faire  
 son droit  
**lawyer** (subs.), homme de loi  
**lead**, *to* (trans. verb), conduire,  
 mener, commander  
**leap**, *to* (intrans. verb), sauter  
**least** (adj.), moindre; — (adv.),  
 moins; *at* —, au moins  
**leave**, *to* (trans. verb), laisser,  
 quitter  
**lecture** (subs.), conférence  
 (fem.); (scolding), sermon (fem.)  
**lecturer** (subs.), maître de con-  
 férence (mas.), conférencier  
**leg** (subs.), jambe (fem.)  
**lend**, *to* (trans. verb), prêter  
**length** (subs.), longueur (fem.);  
*at* —, enfin; *at full* — (ex. 58),  
 autant qu'il put  
**less** (adv.), moins  
**lest** (conj. used with the subjunc-  
 tive), de peur que, de crainte  
 que  
**letter** (subs.), lettre (fem.)  
**library** (subs.), bibliothèque  
 (fem.)  
**licentious** (adj.), licencieux  
**lie** (subs.), mensonge (mas.); *to*  
 — (intrans. verb), mentir (irr.  
 verb); *to* — (intrans. verb),  
 être couché, se coucher  
**life** (subs.), vie (fem.)  
**light**, *to* (trans. verb), allu-  
 mer  
**like**, *to* (trans. verb), aimer  
**like** (prep.), comme  
**limit** (subs.), limite (fem.)  
**linen** (subs.), linge (mas.)  
**link** (subs.), lien (mas.), chaîne  
 (fem.)  
**liquor** (subs.), liqueur (fem.),  
 cordial (mas.)  
**listen to**, *to*, écouter  
**literal** (adj.), littéral  
**literary** (adj.), littéraire  
**literature** (subs.), littérature  
 (fem.)

**little** (adj.), petit ; — (adv.), peu (de)  
**littleness** (subs.), petitesse (fem.)  
**live, to** (intrans. verb), vivre (irr. verb), demeurer  
**livelihood, vie** (fem.), existence (fem.) ; *to gain an easy —*, gagner sa vie facilement  
**living** (adj.), vivant, en vie  
**lobby** (subs.), foyer (mas.), antichambre (fem.)  
**lofty** (adj.), haut, élevé  
**London** (subs.), Londres  
**long** (adj.), long, (fem.) longue ; — (adv.), longtemps  
**look at, to, regarder**  
**Lord** (subs.), seigneur (mas.).  
**Lord** (the English title), Lord (mas.)  
**lordship** (subs.), seigneurie (fem.)  
**lose, to** (trans. verb), perdre  
**loss** (subs.), perte (fem.)  
**loud** (adv.), haut  
**ludicrous** (adj.), comique  
**lyric** (adj.), lyrique

M.

**madam** (subs.), madame (fem.)  
**magistrate** (subs.), magistrat (mas.)  
**majesty** (subs.), majesté (fem.)  
**make, to** (trans. verb.), faire (irr. verb)  
**man** (subs.), homme (mas.)  
**mandarin** (subs.), mandarin (mas.)  
**manner** (subs.), manière (fem.).  
*In before manner is rendered by de. In the following manner, de la manière suivante*  
**manners** (subs.), mœurs (fem.), manières (fem.)  
**mantle** (subs.), manteau (mas.)

**manufacture, to** (trans. verb), fabriquer  
**many** (adv.), beaucoup (de), bien des  
**marchioness** (subs.), marquise (fem.)  
**marquis** (subs.), marquis (mas.)  
**marshal** (subs.), maréchal (mas.)  
**mask** (subs.), masque (mas.)  
**masterly** (adj.), impérieux  
**matter** (subs.), question (fem.), sujet (mas.)  
**meagre** (adj.), maigre  
**mean, to** (trans and intrans. verb), vouloir dire (irr. verb), entendre, signifier  
**means** (subs.), moyen (mas.) ; *by all —*, certainement ; *by no —*, nullement  
**measure** (subs.), mesure (fem.)  
**medallist** (subs.), médailliste (mas.)  
**medicine** (subs.), médicament (mas.)  
**meet, to** (trans. verb), rencontrer  
**member** (subs.), membre (mas.)  
**memorable** (adj.), mémorable  
**mention, to** (trans. verb), faire mention de  
**merciful** (adj.), miséricordieux  
**merely** (adv.), simplement  
**merry** (adj.), joyeux, gai  
**method** (subs.), méthode (fem.)  
**midst** (subs.), milieu (mas.)  
**mile** (subs.), mille (mas.)  
**military** (adj.), militaire  
**mill** (subs.), moulin (mas.)  
**million** (subs.), million (mas.)  
**mind** (subs.), esprit (mas.)  
**mindful** (adj.), se souvenant de  
**mining inspector** (subs.), inspecteur des mines (mas.)  
**minister** (subs.), ministre, pasteur (mas.)  
**ministry** (subs.), ministère (mas.)  
**minute** (subs.), minute (fem.)



**waith** (subs.), joie (fem.), plaisir (mas.)  
**misbehave, to** (intrans. verb), se mal conduire (irr. verb)  
**mischief** (subs.), mal (mas.)  
**miser** (subs.), avare (mas.)  
**misfortune** (subs.), malheur (mas.)  
**mistake** (subs.), faute (fem.)  
**mode** (subs.), manière (fem.); — *of pardon*, manière de pardonner  
**modern** (adj.), moderne  
**molar** (adj.), molaire  
**moment** (subs.), moment (mas.), instant (mas.)  
**monarch** (subs.), monarque (mas.)  
**monastery** (subs.), monastère (mas.)  
**money** (subs.), argent (mas.)  
**moon** (subs.), lune (fem.)  
**Moor** (subs.), Maure (mas.)  
**moral** (adj.), moral  
**morality** (subs.), moralité (fem.)  
**more** (adv.), plus, davantage  
**morning** (subs.), matin (mas.), matinée (fem.)  
**mortal** (adj.), mortel, des hommes  
**most** (adv.), plus, le plus  
**mother** (subs.), mère (fem.)  
**moujik** (subs.), moujik (mas.)  
**mouth** (subs.), bouche (fem.)  
**mouth out, to** (trans. verb), vociférer  
**move, to** (trans. verb), émouvoir (irr. verb)  
**Mr.** (abbr. of Mister), M. or Monsieur  
**much** (adv.), beaucoup (de); *as* — *as*, autant que; *so* —, tant; *how* —, combien; *too* —, trop  
**multitude** (subs.), multitude (fem.), foule (fem.)  
**musical** (adj.), musical  
**musician** (subs.), musicien (mas.)

**must** (def. intrans. verb), falloir (impers. irr. verb); *devoir* (when no necessity is implied)  
**mutter, to** (intrans. verb), murmurer  
**mutual** (adj.), mutuel  
**my** (poss. adj.), mon, ma, mes (agrees with the following noun)  
**myself** (ref. pron.), me; (emphatic) moi-même

## N.

**name, to** (trans. verb), nommer  
**name** (subs.), nom (mas.)  
**Naples** (subs.), Naples  
**narrative** (subs.), récit (mas.)  
**native** (subs.), habitant (mas.), natif (mas.); — (adj.), natal  
**naturally** (adv.), naturellement  
**nature** (subs.), nature (fem.)  
**neapolitan** (adj.), napolitain  
**near** (adv.), près; — (prep.), près de  
**necessary**, (adj.), nécessaire; *a* — *of*, une chose nécessaire à  
**need, to** (trans. verb), avoir besoin de; *no man — be deceived who will study*, nul homme ne sera trompé s'il étudie  
**needful** (adj.), indispensable  
**neglectful** (adj.), négligent  
**negotiate, to** (trans. verb), négocier  
**neighbour** (subs.), voisin (mas.)  
**neighbourhood** (subs.), voisinage (mas.)  
**never** (adv.), jamais  
**new** (adj.), nouveau, (fem.) nouvelle  
**news** (subs.), nouvelle (fem.)  
**newspaper** (subs.), journal (mas.)  
**next** (adj.), suivant

*mis* ~~proprement~~ —

**nineteen** (adj.), dix-neuf  
**no** (adv.), non; — (adj.), nul,  
aucun, pas de  
**nobility** (subs.), noblesse (fem.)  
**noble** (adj.), noble  
**nobleman** (subs.), gentilhomme  
(mas.)  
**nose** (subs.), nez (mas.)  
**not** (adv.), ne... pas (used with a  
verb); pas, non (used without  
a verb)  
**notice, to** (trans. verb), remar-  
quer  
**novel** (subs.), roman (mas.,  
**novelist** (subs.), romancier  
(mas.)  
**now** (adv.), maintenant, à pré-  
sent; (referring to past time)  
alors  
**number** (subs.), nombre (mas.)  
**nurse** (subs.), garde-malade  
(fem.)

O.

**oath** (subs.), serment (mas.)  
**obedience** (subs.), obéissance  
(fem.)  
**object, to** (intrans. verb), faire  
une objection  
**oblige, to** (trans. verb), obliger  
**observation** (subs.), observation  
(fem.), remarque (fem.)  
**observe, to** (trans. verb), obser-  
ver, remarquer  
**obtain, to** (trans. verb), obtenir  
(irr. verb)  
**occasion** (subs.), occasion (fem.)  
**occasionally** (adv.), de temps à  
autre  
**occupy, to** (trans. verb), occuper  
**occur, to** (intrans. verb), avoir  
lieu, arriver, se passer  
**of** (prep.), de  
**offence** (subs.), offense (fem.)

**official** (adj.), officiel  
**often** (adv.), souvent  
**old** (adj.), vieux, (fem.) vieille  
**Oliver** (subs.), Olivier  
**on** (prep.), sur  
**once** (adv.), une fois  
**one** (adj.), un, une  
**only** (adv.), seulement, simple-  
ment  
**open** (adj.), déclaré, ouvert; *half*  
—, entr'ouvert  
**opera** (subs.), opéra (mas.)  
**opinion** (subs.), opinion (fem.)  
**opponent** (subs.), adversaire  
(mas.)  
**oppose, to** (trans. verb), s'op-  
poser à  
**orchestra** (subs.), orchestre  
(mas.)  
**order** (subs.), ordre (mas.), dé-  
coration (fem.); *covered with*  
—s, couverte de décorations.  
(When a noun in a partitive  
sense is in the genitive, the  
partitive article is not trans-  
lated, simply because *of* and  
*some* are the same in French.)  
— **to** (trans. verb), ordonner  
**origin** (subs.), origine (fem.)  
**orphan** (subs.), orphelin, e  
**outline** (subs.), contour (mas.),  
esquisse (fem.)  
**outside** (prep.), au-delà de  
**overhear to** (trans. verb), enten-  
dre par hasard  
**overwhelm, to** (trans. verb), ac-  
cabler  
**owe, to** (trans. verb), devoir.  
*Ought to* is rendered by the  
conditional of *devoir*  
**own** (adj.), propre  
**oxygen** (subs.), the same word  
should be used in French  
**oyster** (subs.), huître (fem.)

## P.

**painter** (subs.), peintre (mas.)  
**palace** (subs.), palais (mas.)  
**pale** (adj.), pâle  
**payer** (subs.), papier (mas.)  
**pardon** (subs.), pardon (mas.)  
**Paris** (subs.), Paris  
**Parisian** (adj.), parisien  
**part** (subs.), partie (fem.)  
**party** (subs.), partie (fem.), so-  
 ciété (fem.), soirée (fem.); —  
 (sect) parti (mas.)  
**pass**, *to* (intrans. verb), passer  
**pathetic** (adj.), pathétique  
**patience** (subs.), patience (fem.)  
**patient** (adj.), patient; *to be*—  
*of*, pouvoir endurer  
**patrimony** (subs.), patrimoine  
 (mas.)  
**pause**, *to* (intrans. verb), s'arrê-  
 ter, faire une pause  
**pay**, *to* (trans. verb), payer  
**paymaster** (subs.), payeur (mas.)  
**payment** (subs.), paiement  
 (mas.)  
**peace** (subs.), paix (fem.)  
**peasant** (subs.), paysan (mas.)  
**peevish** (adj.), acariâtre  
**penny** (subs.), penny (mas.),  
 deux sous (mas.)  
**people** (subs.), peuple (mas.),  
 gens (mas.)  
**perfect** (adj.), parfait  
**perfidy** (subs.), perfidie (fem.)  
**perform**, *to* (intrans. verb), jouer,  
 donner des représentations  
**perhaps** (adv.), peut-être  
**period** (subs.), époque (fem.)  
**perish**, *to* (intrans. verb), périr  
**permission** (subs.), permission  
 (fem.)  
**permit**, *to* (trans. verb), per-  
 mettre (irr. verb)  
**person** (subs.), personne (fem.)  
**personal** (adj.), personnel

**pertinent** (adj.), établi  
**pester**, *to* (trans. verb), tour-  
 menter  
**philosopher** (subs.), philosophe  
 (mas.)  
**phrase** (subs.), phrase (fem.)  
**physician** (subs.), médecin  
 (mas.)  
**pick up**, *to* (trans. verb), ra-  
 masser  
**piece** (subs.), morceau (mas.)  
**pilgrim** (subs.), pèlerin (mas.)  
**pilgrimage** (subs.), pèlerinage  
 (mas.)  
**pillage**, *to* (trans. verb), piller  
**pin** (subs.), épingle (fem.)  
**pipe** (subs.), chalumeau (mas.),  
 flûte (fem.)  
**place** (subs.), place (fem.), en-  
 droit (mas.)  
**plain** (subs.), plaine (fem.)  
**play** (subs.), pièce (fem.)  
**plea** (subs.), justification (fem.),  
 excuse (fem.)  
**plead**, *to* (intrans. and trans.  
 verb), plaider  
**please**, *to* (intrans. and trans.  
 verb), plaire (irr. verb), vou-  
 loir (irr. verb); *till he be*  
*pleased*, qu'il lui plaise  
**plot** (subs.), intrigue (fem.)  
**pocket** (subs.), poche (fem.)  
**poem** (subs.), poème (mas.)  
**poet** (subs.), poète (mas.)  
**point out**, *to* (trans. verb), faire  
 remarquer, montrer au doigt  
**politeness** (subs.), politesse  
 (fem.)  
**pomp** (subs.), pompe (fem.)  
**poor** (adj.), pauvre  
**populace** (subs.), populace (fem.)  
**port** (subs.), posture (fem.)  
**portrait** (subs.), portrait (mas.)  
**position** (subs.), position (fem.)  
**possess**, *to* (trans. verb), possé-  
 der

*... = ... images*

**post** (subs.), poste (mas.), place (fem.)  
**postage** (subs.), port de lettre (mas.)  
**posterity** (subs.), postérité (fem.)  
**post-master** (subs.), maître de poste (mas.)  
**post-office** (subs.), poste (fem.), bureau de poste (mas.)  
**pound** (subs.), livre (fem.)  
**poverty** (subs.), pauvreté (fem.)  
**power** (subs.), pouvoir (mas.), puissance (fem.)  
**praise, to** (trans. verb), louer  
**pray, to** (trans. verb), prier  
**prayer** (subs.), prière (fem.)  
**preach, to** (intrans. verb), prêcher  
**preface** (subs.), préface (fem.)  
**prefer, to** (trans. verb), préférer  
**preliminary** (subs.), préliminaire (mas.)  
**prescription** (subs.), ordonnance (fem.)  
**presence** (subs.), présence (fem.)  
**present** (subs.), cadeau (mas.); — (adj.), présent  
**pressing** (adj.), détaillé  
**presumption** (subs.), audace (fem.), présomption (fem.)  
**prevalence** (subs.), règne (mas.)  
**prevent, to** (trans. verb), empêcher  
**price** (subs.), prix (mas.)  
**prince** (subs.), prince (mas.)  
**princess** (subs.), princesse (fem.)  
**principle** (subs.), principe (mas.)  
**prison** (subs.), prison (fem.)  
**prisoner** (subs.), prisonnier (mas.), accusé (mas.)  
**prize** (subs.), prix (mas.)  
**probability** (subs.), probabilité (fem.); *in all* —, selon toute probabilité

**probable** (adj.), probable  
**produce, to** (trans. verb), produire (irr. verb)  
**production** (subs.), production (fem.)  
**profess, to** (trans. verb), professer  
**professional** (adj.), professionnel; — *man*, médecin (mas.)  
**progression** (subs.), progression (fem.), marche (fem.)  
**prompter** (subs.), souffleur (mas.)  
**pronounce, to** (trans. verb), prononcer  
**prosperous** (adj.), prospère  
**protector** (subs.), protecteur (mas.)  
**provincial** (adj.), de province  
**Prussia** (subs.), Prusse (fem.)  
**public** (subs.), public (mas.); — (adj.), public, (fem.) publique  
**pull, to** (trans. verb), tirer  
**punch** (subs.), punch (mas.)  
**punish, to** (trans. verb), punir  
**punishment** (subs.), punition (fem.), châtimement (mas.)  
**pure** (adj.), pur  
**purpose** (subs.), but (mas.), dessein (mas.)  
**put, to** (trans. verb), mettre (irr. verb)

Q.

**quaint** (adj.), bizarre  
**quality** (subs.), qualité (fem.)  
**quarterly** (adj.), trimestriel  
**queer** (adj.), étrange  
**query** (subs.), question (fem.)  
**question** (subs.), question (fem.)  
**quietly** (adv.), tranquillement  
**quite** (adv.), bien, tout, tout-à-fait  
**quote, to** (trans. verb), citer

## R.

**rapidity** (subs.), rapidité (fem.)  
**rather** (adv.), plutôt, quelque peu  
**read, to** (trans. verb), lire  
**reader** (subs.), lecteur (mas.)  
**really** (adv.) réellement  
**reason** (subs.), raison (fem.), excuse (fem.)  
**reasonably** (adv.), raisonnablement  
**rebellion** (subs.), rébellion (fem.)  
**insurrection** (fem.)  
**rebuke** (subs.), réprimande (fem.)  
**receipt** (subs.), reçu (mas.)  
**receive, to** (trans. verb), recevoir  
**recently** (adv.), récemment  
**recognise, to** (trans. verb), reconnaître (irr. verb)  
**recollect, to** (trans. verb), se rappeler  
**recover, to** (trans. verb), recouvrer  
**refer to, to** (intrans. verb), se rapporter à  
**regard** (subs.), égard (mas.)  
**regret** (subs.), regret (mas.);  
*to* — (trans. verb), regretter  
**rehearse, to** (trans. verb), répéter  
**reject, to** (trans. verb), rejeter  
**rejoinder** (subs.), répartie (fem.), réplique (fem.)  
**relate, to** (trans. verb), raconter  
**relationship** (subs.), parenté (fem.)  
**remain, to** (intrans. verb), rester  
**remainder** (subs.), reste (mas.)  
**remark** (subs.), remarque (fem.)  
**remarkably** (adv.), excessivement  
**remember, to** (trans. verb), se rappeler  
**remind, to** (trans. verb), rappeler  
**render, to** (trans. verb), rendre

**reply** (subs.), réponse (fem.);  
*to* — (intrans. verb), répondre  
**repose** (subs.), repos (mas.)  
**represent, to** (trans. verb), représenter  
**representative** (subs.), représentant (mas.), expression (fem.)  
**reproof** (subs.), blâme (mas.)  
**reprove, to** (trans. verb), blâmer, censurer  
**republic** (subs.), république (fem.)  
**reputation** (subs.), réputation (fem.)  
**request** (subs.), requête (fem.), demande (fem.); *to* — (trans. verb), prier, demander  
**require, to** (trans. verb), exiger  
**resemble, to** (trans. verb), ressembler à  
**residence** (subs.), résidence (fem.)  
**resolve, to** (trans. verb), décider, résoudre (irr. verb); — (intrans. verb), se décider à  
**respect** (subs.), respect (mas.);  
*to* — (trans. verb), respecter  
**respecting** (prep.), touchant, concernant  
**rest** (subs.), reste (mas.)  
**retire, to** (trans. verb), retirer; — (intrans. verb), se retirer  
**retort, to** (trans. verb), répliquer  
**retreat** (subs.), retraite (fem.)  
**return, to** (intrans. verb), retourner, revenir (irr. verb); *to* — *home*, rentrer; — (to reply), répliquer, répartir  
**reverse** (subs.), revers (mas.)  
**review** (subs.), revue (fem.)  
**richly** (adv.), richement  
**rise, to** (intrans. verb), se lever  
**risk** (subs.), risque (mas.)  
**rival, to** (intrans. verb), rivaliser (avec)  
**rivalry** (subs.), rivalité (fem.)

**rob**, *to* (trans. verb), voler  
**roll** (subs.), liste (fem.)  
**Roman** (adj.), Romain  
**Rome** (subs.), Rome  
**room** (subs.), chambre (fem.),  
 salle (fem.), salon (mas.),  
 place, (fem.)  
**roused** (past part.), poussé à  
 bout, impatienté  
**rout**, *to* (trans. verb), mettre en  
 déroute (irr. verb)  
**royal** (adj.), royal  
**royalty** (subs.), royauté (fem.)  
**runner** (subs.), coureur  
**Russian** (adj.), russe; *the* —  
*capital*, la capitale de la  
 Russie  
**rustic** (adj.), rustique

S.

**sadly** (adv.), tristement  
**sail**, *to* (intrans. verb), faire  
 voile (irr. verb), faire une  
 promenade en mer  
**salt** (subs.), sel (mas.); — *water*,  
 eau salée  
**same** (adj.), même  
**sarcastically** (adv.), d'une  
 manière sarcastique  
**satirize**, *to* (trans. verb),  
 satiriser  
**satisfy**, *to* (trans. verb), satis-  
 faire (irr. verb)  
**sauce** (subs.), sauce (fem.)  
**save**, *to* (trans. verb), sauver  
**saw**, *to* (trans. verb), scier  
**say**, *to* (trans. verb), dire (irr.  
 verb)  
**scandal** (subs.), scandale (mas.),  
 médisance (fem.); *the school*  
*for* —, l'école de la médisance  
**scarcely** (adv.), à peine, guère  
**scene** (subs.), scène (fem.)

**scepticism** (subs.), scepticisme  
 (mas.)  
**school** (subs.), école (fem.)  
**scientific** (adj.), scientifique  
**Scotland** (subs.), Ecosse (fem.)  
**sculptor** (subs.), sculpteur  
 (mas.)  
**sea** (subs.), mer (fem.)  
**search for**, *to* (trans. verb),  
 chercher  
**seat** (subs.), siège (mas.); *to* —  
*one's self* (refl. verb), s'asseoir  
**see**, *to* (trans. verb), voir (irr.  
 verb)  
**seize**, *to* (trans. verb), saisir  
**sell**, *to* (trans. verb), vendre  
**send**, *to* (trans. verb), envoyer  
 (irr. future); *to* — *for*, en-  
 voyer chercher, faire venir  
**sensation** (subs.), sensation  
 (fem.)  
**senses** (subs.), sens (mas.); *to*  
*lose one's* —, perdre connais-  
 sance, perdre l'usage de ses  
 sens  
**servant** (subs.), domestique,  
 serviteur (mas.)  
**service** (subs.), service (mas.)  
**seven** (adj.), sept  
**seventy** (adj.), soixante-dix  
**severe** (adj.), sévère  
**sexton** (subs.), fossoyeur (mas.)  
**shake**, *to* (trans. verb), ébranler  
**shape** (subs.), forme (fem.)  
**sharp** (adj.), habile, fin, malin  
**sharpen**, *to* (trans. verb),  
 aiguiser  
**sharply** (adv.), brusquement  
**shave**, *to* (trans. verb), raser,  
 faire la barbe à; — (intrans.  
 verb), se raser, se faire la  
 barbe  
**shelf** (subs.), tablette (fem.)  
**shell** (subs.), écaille (fem.)  
**ship** (subs.), vaisseau (mas.)  
**shirt** (subs.), chemise (fem.)

*to serve for - S. is de.*

**shop** (subs.), boutique (fem.), magasin (mas.)  
**shore** (subs.), rivage (mas.); *on* —, à terre  
**short** (adj.), court; *a — time*, peu de temps  
**shot** (subs.), boulet (mas.)  
**shoulder** (subs.), épaule (fem.)  
**show, to** (trans. verb), montrer  
**Sicilian** (adj.), sicilien  
**sick** (adj.), malade  
**sickness** (subs.), maladie (fem.)  
**signature** (subs.), signature (fem.)  
**significant** (adj.), significatif  
**sill** (subs.), allège (fem.)  
**simple** (adj.), simple  
**simplicity** (subs.), simplicité (fem.)  
**sing, to** (trans. and intrans. verb), chanter  
**singer** (subs.), barde (mas.), chanteur  
**single** (adj.), seul  
**singular** (adj.), singulier  
**sink, to** (trans. verb), jeter, couler; — (intrans. verb), s'affaiblir  
**sir** (subs.), monsieur (mas.)  
**sire** (subs.), sire (mas.)  
**sister** (subs.), sœur (fem.)  
**sit, to** (trans. verb), s'asseoir (irr. verb); *to be sitting*, être assis  
**skilful** (adj.), habile, adroit  
**skill**, (subs.), habileté (fem.)  
**slender** (adj.), maigre, élancé  
**slip** (subs.), petit morceau  
**smile** (subs.), sourire (mas.)  
**smoke, to** (trans. and intrans. verb), fumer  
**smuggled** (past. part.), de contrebande  
**so** (adv.), si; — (conj.), aussi  
**soldier** (subs.), soldat (mas.)  
**solemn** (adj.), solennel

**solemnly** (adv.), solennellement  
**solo** (subs.), solo (mas.)  
**some** (partit. art.), du, de la, de l', des; — *of*, quelques uns des; — *one*, quelqu'un  
**sometimes** (adv.), quelquefois  
**somewhat** (adv.), un peu, quelque peu  
**son** (subs.), fils (mas.)  
**song** (subs.), chanson (fem.)  
**soon** (adv.), bientôt, tôt; *as — as*, aussitôt que  
**sorry** (adj.), contrarié, fâché  
**sort** (subs.), sorte (fem.), espèce (fem.)  
**south** (subs.), sud (mas.)  
**sovereign** (subs.), souverain  
**sound** (subs.), son (mas.), bruit (mas.)  
**Spain** (subs.), Espagne (mas.)  
**Spanish** (adj.), espagnol  
**speak, to** (intrans. verb), parler  
**specially** (adv.), spécialement  
**speculation** (subs.), théorie (fem), conjecture (fem.)  
**speech** (subs.), discours (mas.), paroles (fem.)  
**spend, to** (trans. verb), dépenser  
**spirit** (subs.), courage (mas.), ardeur (fem.), esprit (mas.)  
**spiritual** (adj.), spirituel  
**splendid** (adj.), magnifique, splendide  
**spur** (subs.), éperon (mas.)  
**stage** (subs.), scène (fem.)  
**stalk off, to** (trans. verb), quitter à pas majestueux  
**stamp** (subs.), timbre (mas.), timbre-poste  
**stand, to** (intrans. verb), être, se tenir; *stood eighty degrees*, fût à quatre-vingts degrés; — (trans. verb), endurer, supporter  
**state** (subs.), état (mas.)  
**stay, to** (intrans. verb), rester

*Success, 21-22-23-24-25-26-27-28-29-30-31-32-33-34-35-36-37-38-39-40-41-42-43-44-45-46-47-48-49-50-51-52-53-54-55-56-57-58-59-60-61-62-63-64-65-66-67-68-69-70-71-72-73-74-75-76-77-78-79-80-81-82-83-84-85-86-87-88-89-90-91-92-93-94-95-96-97-98-99-100*

**steal**, *to* (trans. verb), voler  
**step**, *to* (intrans. verb), marcher;  
*to — forward*, s'avancer  
**stick** (subs.), canne (fem.)  
**stiff** (adj.), raide  
**still** (adv.), encore  
**stimulate**, *to* (trans. verb),  
stimuler  
**stone** (subs.), pierre (fem.)  
**story** (subs.), histoire (fem.),  
anecdote (fem.)  
**St. Petersburg** (subs.), Saint  
Pétersbourg  
**strange** (adj.), étrange  
**street** (subs.), rue (fem.)  
**stretch out**, *to* (trans. verb),  
étendre  
**strike**, *to* (trans. verb), frapper;  
*to — a blow*, donner un coup  
**struggle** (subs.), lutte (fem.)  
**studious** (adj.), recherché  
**study** (subs.), étude (fem.); *to*  
— (trans. verb), étudier  
**subdue**, *to* (trans. verb), dompter,  
subjuguier  
**subject** (subs.), sujet (mas.)  
**succeed**, *to* (followed by a  
noun and meaning "to come  
after"), succéder à; *to succeed*  
*in* (followed by a verb and  
meaning "to be successful"),  
réussir à, parvenir à (irr.  
verb); *to succeed* (intrans. verb),  
se succéder  
**successful** (adj.), heureux  
**such** (adj.), tel, pareil; — *a*,  
un tel; — (before an adject-  
ive), si  
**suddenly** (adv.), tout-à-coup  
**sufficiently** (adv.), suffisam-  
ment  
**suicide** (subs.), suicide (mas.)  
**sullen** (adj.), sombre, triste,  
maussade  
**sum** (subs.), somme (fem.)  
**summer** (subs.), été (mas.)

**sun** (subs.), soleil (mas.)  
**superb** (adj.), magnifique  
**supercilious** (adj.), dédaigneux  
**superior** (adj.), supérieur  
**superstitious** (adj.), superstitieux  
**suppose**, *to* (trans. verb), sup-  
poser  
**surgeon** (subs.), chirurgien  
(mas.)  
**surprise**, *to* (trans. verb), sur-  
prendre (irr. verb)  
**surround**, *to* (trans. verb), en-  
tourer  
**survive**, *to* (trans. verb), survivre  
à (irr. verb)  
**sustenance** (subs.), nourriture  
(fem.)  
**swarm**, *to* (intrans. verb), four-  
miller  
**sway** (subs.), empire (mas.):  
*great —*, beaucoup d'empire  
**swear**, *to* (trans. and intrans.  
verb), jurer  
**swift** (adj.), rapide  
**swim**, *to* (intrans. verb), nager  
**symptom** (subs.), symptôme  
(mas.)

T.

**table** (subs.), table (fem.)  
**take**, *to* (trans. verb), prendre  
(irr. verb); *to — off*, ôter;  
*to — away*, emporter; *to —*  
*into*, mettre (irr. verb); *to —*  
*in*, attraper; *to — care to*,  
prendre garde de  
**tale** (subs.), conte (mas.)  
**talent** (subs.), talent (mas.)  
**talk**, *to* (intrans. verb), parler  
causer  
**tall** (adj.), grand; *a — man*, un  
homme grand  
**tap**, *to* (trans. verb), taper,  
toucher



**tar** (subs.), matelot (mas.)  
**taste** (subs.), goût (mas.)  
**tease, to** (trans. verb), taquiner  
**tell, to** (trans. verb), dire (irr. verb), raconter  
**tender** (adj.), tendre  
**than** (conj.), que  
**that** (dem. adj.), ce, cet, cette ; — (dem. pron.), celui, celle ; — (*that thing*), cela ; *that is*, voilà  
**theatre** (subs.), théâtre (mas.)  
**theft** (subs.), vol (mas.)  
**their** (poss. adj.), leur, leurs  
**theirs** (poss. pron.), le leur, la leur, les leurs  
**then** (adv.), ensuite, alors, donc  
**there** (adv.), là ; — *is*, il y a  
**thermometer** (subs.), thermomètre (mas.)  
**thief** (subs.), voleur (mas.)  
**thin** (adj.), maigre  
**thing** (subs.), chose (fem.) ; *something*, quelque chose (mas.)  
**think, to** (intrans. verb), penser ; *he thought that a man like him*, il lui sembla qu'un homme comme lui  
**third** (ordin. adj.), troisième ; — (fract. adj.), tiers, (fem.) tierce  
**thirteen** (adj.), treize  
**thirty** (adj.), trente  
**this** (dem. adj.), ce, cet, cette ; — (*this thing*), ceci ; *this is*, voici  
**those** (dem. adj.), ces ; — (dem. pron.), ceux, celles  
**thought** (subs.), pensée (fem.)  
**thoughtful** (adj.), pensif, attentif  
**thousand** (adj.), mille ; — (subs.), millier (mas.)  
**threshold** (subs.), seuil (mas.) ; *on the very* —, au commencement même

**through** (prep.), à travers, par  
**throw, to** (trans. verb), jeter ; *to — back*, rejeter, jeter de côté  
**tie, to** (trans. verb), attacher, lier  
**till** (prep.), jusqu'à ; — (conj.), jusqu'à ce que (with the subjunctive)  
**time** (subs.), temps (mas.), époque (fem.), moment (mas.), heure (fem.), fois (fem.)  
**tint** (subs.), teinte (fem.)  
**to** (prep.), à  
**together** (adv.), ensemble  
**to-morrow** (adv.), demain  
**ton** (subs.), tonneau (mas.)  
**tongue** (subs.), langue (fem.)  
**tonsor** (subs.), Figaro de village  
**tooth** (subs.), dent (fem.)  
**torture** (subs.), torture (fem.), supplice (mas.)  
**totally** (adv.), entièrement  
**touch, to** (trans. verb), toucher  
**town** (subs.), ville (fem.)  
**trace, to** (trans. verb), tracer  
**tragedian** (subs.), tragédien (mas.)  
**tragic** (adj.), tragique  
**tranquil** (adj.), calme  
**transmit, to** (trans. verb), transmettre (irr. verb)  
**trap** (subs.), voiture (fem.)  
**traveller** (subs.), voyageur (mas.)  
**treason** (subs.), trahison (fem.)  
**treaty** (subs.), traité (mas.)  
**tremendous** (adj.), énorme  
**tribe** (subs.), tribu (fem.)  
**triumph** (subs.), triomphe (mas.)  
**troop** (subs.), troupe (fem.)  
**trophy** (subs.), trophée (mas.)  
**true** (adj.), vrai  
**truth** (subs.), vérité (fem.)  
**try, to** (trans. verb), essayer ; *to be tried*, être mis en jugement  
**turbulent** (adj.), turbulent

**turn**, *to* (trans. verb), tourner ;  
 — (intrans. verb), se tourner ;  
 — (subs.), tour (mas.) ; *at every turn*, à tout propos  
**two** (adj.), deux  
**tyrannise**, *to* (trans. verb), tyranniser

U.

**unable** (adj.), incapable ; *to be* —, ne pas pouvoir  
**unanimously** (adv.), à l'unanimité  
**unappreciative** (adj.), incapable d'apprécier le talent  
**unchallenged and unapproached**, que personne ne dispute et ne peut atteindre  
**uncle** (subs.), oncle (mas.)  
**undecieve**, *to* (trans. verb), dé tromper, désabuser  
**under** (prep.), sous  
**understand**, *to* (trans. verb), comprendre (irr. verb)  
**undertake**, *to* (trans. verb), entreprendre (irr. verb)  
**unhappy** (adj.), malheureux  
**unite**, *to* (trans. verb), réunir  
**unluckily** (adv.), malheureuse ment  
**unnatural** (adj.), dénaturé  
**unwell** (adv.), mal portant  
**unwilling** (adj.), mal disposé  
**upon** (prep.), sur  
**upright** (adv.), droit  
**upstairs** (adv.), en haut  
**urgently** (adv.), urgemment  
**use**, *to* (trans. verb), traiter ; *to* — *to* (intrans. verb), avoir l'habitude de (not translated before a verb and giving it the force of an imperfect indicative)  
**usual** (adj.), habituel ; — (adv.), d'habitude  
**utmost** (adj.), plus grand

V.

**vain** (adj.), vain ; *in* —, en vain  
**valley** (subs.), vallée (fem.)  
**value** (subs.), valeur (fem.)  
**various** (adj.), différent  
**verse** (subs.), vers (mas.)  
**very** (adj.), même (*to be placed after the substantive*) ; — (adv.), très, fort, bien  
**vigorous** (adj.), vigoureux  
**village** (subs.), village (mas.)  
**violence** (subs.), violence (fem.)  
**violent** (adj.), violent  
**violin** (subs.), violon (mas.)  
**vire** (subs.), vire, la vire  
**visit** (subs.), visite (fem.) ; *to* — (trans. verb), visiter, faire une visite à  
**vivacity** (subs.), vivacité (fem.)  
**vote** (subs.), vote (mas.) ; *to* —, (intrans. verb), voter  
**vouch for**, *to* (trans. verb), attester  
**vow**, *to* (intrans. verb), jurer

W.

**wait for**, *to* (trans. verb), attendre ; *to* — *upon*, visiter, servir  
**waiter** (subs.), garçon, sommelier (mas.)  
**waking**, *half*, assoupissement (mas.)  
**walk** (subs.), promenade (fem.)  
**wall** (subs.), mur (mas.)  
**want** (subs.), manque (mas.) ; *to* — (trans. verb), vouloir (irr. verb), avoir besoin de  
**war** (subs.), guerre (fem.)  
**warmly** (adv.), avec chaleur  
**warrior** (subs.), guerrier (mas.)  
**water** (subs.), eau (fem.)  
**Waterloo** (subs.), Waterloo

# Brachet's Public School Elementary French Grammar.

WITH EXERCISES.

By **A. BRACHET**, Lauréat de l'Académie française,

And adapted for English Schools by the

**Rev. P. H. BRETTE, B.D., & GUSTAVE MASSON, B.A.,**

*Officiers d'Académie;*

*Past and Present Examiners in the University of London.*

EIGHTEENTH EDITION.

**Part I.—ACCIDENCE.** With Examination Questions and Exercises.

Cloth, 176 pages, small 8vo. With a complete French-English and English-French Vocabulary. **Price 1s. 6d.**

**Part II.—SYNTAX.** With Examination Questions and Exercises, and a complete French-English and English-French Vocabulary.

**Price 1s. 6d.**

**KEY TO THE EXERCISES.** For Teachers only. **Price 1s. 6d.**

## A SUPPLEMENTARY SERIES OF EXERCISES.

**Vol. I.—ACCIDENCE.** With a Supplement to Grammar and a Vocabulary to the Exercises. **Cloth, price 1s.**

**Vol. II.—SYNTAX.** **Cloth, price 1s.**

**KEY TO THE ACCIDENCE, PRICE 2s. KEY TO THE SYNTAX, PRICE 2s.**

## OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

"A good school-book. The type is as clear as the arrangement."—*Athenæum*, Jan. 6, 1877.

"We are not astonished to hear that it has met with the most flattering reception."—*School Board Chronicle*, March 10, 1877.

"We have no hesitation in stating our opinion that no more useful or practical introduction to the French Language has been published than this."—*Public Opinion*, March 24, 1877.

"England is fortunate in the services of a small knot of French Masters like MM. Masson and Brette, who have, alike by their teaching and their school books, done much for the scientific study of the language and literature of France. After successfully introducing into English form the 'Public School French Grammar,' in which M. Littré's researches are happily applied by M. Brachet so as to show the relation of modern French to Latin M. Brette and Masson here translate and adapt the *Petite* or Elementary French Grammar. That has at once proved as popular as the more elaborate treatise."—*Edinburgh Daily Review*, March 20, 1877.

"Of this excellent school series we have before us the 'Public School Elementary French Grammar'—(1) *Accidence*, and (2) *Syntax*. Brachet's work is simply beyond comparison with any other of its class; and its scientific character is not sacrificed in the very judicious adaptation which has made it available for English students.—*There is no better elementary French Grammar, whether for boys or for girls.*"—*Hereford Times*, April 11, 1877.

"Messrs. HACHETTE issue some valuable contributions to their series of French Educational works. M. Auguste Brachet is well known as one of the most scientific and learned of French philologists and grammarians, and the practical utility of his 'Elementary French Grammar' is proved by the fact that the translation of it by the Rev. P. H. Brette, head master of the French School at Christ's Hospital, and Mr G. Masson, assistant master at Harrow, has already reached a second edition."—*The Scotsman*, April 10, 1877.

# THE PUBLIC SCHOOL FRENCH GRAMMAR.

Giving the latest Results of Modern Philology,  
and based upon the "Nouvelle Grammaire Française" of

**AUGUSTE BRACHET,**

Lauréat de l'Académie française et de l'Académie des Inscriptions.

---

## Part I.—ACCIDENCE.

New Edition, revised and enlarged.

BY

REVEREND P. H. ERNEST BRETTE, B.D.,

*Head Master of the French School, Christ's Hospital, London;*

GUSTAVE MASSON, B.A.,

*Assistant Master and Librarian, Harrow School;*

Officiers d'Académie.

ELPHÈGE JANAU,

*Assistant French Master, Christ's Hospital, London;*

AND

H. C. LEVANDER, M.A.,

*Formerly Scholar of Pembroke College, Oxford; one of the Masters in University College School, London.*

1 Vol. small 8vo. 464 Pages. Cloth. Price 3s. 6d.

---

## EXERCISES.

ACCIDENCE.—Part I. Price 1s. 6d.

KEY TO THE EXERCISES OF ACCIDENCE, by E. JANAU.

For teachers only, cloth 1s. 6d.

---

## OPINIONS.

"The best Grammar of the French language that has been published in England."—  
PROFESSOR ATTWELL.

"This is a revised and enlarged edition of the excellent work. Its clear and comprehensive character has been widely recognised, and as the new issue summarises the changes made in the last edition of the "Dictionnaire de l'Académie," besides making other decided improvements, the sphere of its usefulness will be enlarged. The introduction of the elementary rules of syntax is a feature calculated to be of service to all students preparing for examinations"—*Daily Chronicle*, June 19, 1883.

# PRACTICAL AND THEORETICAL FRENCH CLASS BOOKS.

By PAUL BAUME.

These particularly modern Works, which have been unanimously praised by the press, and well received by the educational world, are especially adapted to preparing for Public Examinations. "*Ni trop ni trop peu*" has been the Author's motto, and the marked favour with which his various Works have been received is a sufficient proof that he carried out his motto to the satisfaction of Instructors and Principals of Schools and Colleges throughout the United Kingdom.

---

## PAUL BAUME'S PRACTICAL FRENCH GRAMMAR AND EXERCISES,

FOR THE USE OF BEGINNERS AND GENERAL CLASSES.

*Ninth Edition, price 3s. 6d.*

\* \* The chief features of the Practical French Grammar are :—

1stly, Each page of practice faces a page of theory.

2dly, No dictionary is required.

3dly, It is constructed on the progressive system, each page of practice being as it were an examination paper on every previous subject.

4thly, The rules, 142 in number, are short, and such as can be easily explained to young pupils.

*N.B.*—Especial attention is directed to pages 6 and 7 of the Practical French Grammar, in which the system of teaching and manner of using the book are fully explained.

---

## KEY

TO EXERCISES IN PRACTICAL FRENCH GRAMMAR,

WITH HINTS TO TEACHERS, AND ANNOTATIONS.

*Price 2s. 6d.*

# PAUL BAUME'S FRENCH SYNTAX AND EXERCISES

FOR THE USE OF ADVANCED STUDENTS.

*Second Edition, price 4s.*

• • The chief features of the French Syntax are :—

1stly, Theory and practice facing each other.

2dly, The comprehensive nature of the practical pages, each containing a vocabulary of idiomatic, familiar, and colloquial expressions; quotations from French classics, illustrating the rules opposite; and, lastly, familiar English to be turned into French.

*N.B.*—The French Syntax is intended to prepare for the higher class of public examinations, and should be used by those students only who are well acquainted with the accidence of the French language, and know the irregular verbs. The system and advantages of the French Syntax are fully explained in the preface.

---

## KEY TO THE TRANSLATIONS AND EXERCISES IN FRENCH SYNTAX,

FOR THE USE OF TEACHERS AND SELF-TAUGHT STUDENTS.

*Price 2s. 6d.*

---

"The appearance of a seventh edition of M. Baume's well-known grammar speaks for itself. It possesses distinctly a praiseworthy character of its own, marked chiefly by a just prominence given to 'practice,' a clear direct style of exposition, and a refreshing freedom from technicalities. It extends to 250 pages, is amply furnished with carefully graduated exercises, bestows due attention on the irregularities of the verb, and contains many well-selected lists of nouns. . . . Altogether this grammar is an admirable work of the kind, essentially designed for use, devoid of pedantic phraseology, systematic, and therefore simple. It may also be commended on the score of cheapness, and of beautiful typography."—*Educational News*.

"The attractiveness of Syntax is fully given effect to by M. Baume, who illustrates the idiomatic peculiarities of Gallic construction in 1000 racy colloquialisms. The rules, which form the basis of his work, are simple and comprehensive, and their operation is unmistakably exhibited in 100 reading, parsing, and translating lessons. Some 40 of its 154 pages are taken up with preliminary rules of accidence and construction, a list of irregular verbs, &c., so as to obviate the necessity of referring to preliminary books, and to give to his present work a character of completeness. Its more extensive use in the schools would certainly be productive of excellent fruits."—*Educational News*.

# COMPARATIVE IDIOMS.

## FIRST STEPS IN FRENCH IDIOMS.

CONTAINING

An Alphabetical List of Idioms, Explanatory Notes, and Examination Papers.

Edited by HENRI BUE, B.-ès-L.,

French Master at Merchant Taylors' School, London.

1 vol., 192 pages, cloth.

Price 1s. 6d.

*The Key to the above, together with the Keys to the First and Second Books (for Professors only), 2s. 6d.*

"The present work is designed as an introduction to the *Expressions Idiomatiques Comparées*, and will be found extremely useful for students who wish to become acquainted with colloquial French. The words are arranged in alphabetical order, and the principal idiomatic phrases in which they occur are given, together with an English version. Excellent notes illustrate the origin of the various locutions, and a selection of one thousand sentences serves the purpose of examination tests."—*School Board Chronicle*.

"One of the commendable characteristics of this little book is that it gives intelligible reasons for idiomatic peculiarities. Another feature which will be found to be a recommendation is the supply of the key-word, which is to be taken into account in rendering English sentences into idiomatic French. In these two particulars it is the best guide we have met with, and we recommend it to learners as a book they will find pleasure as well as profit in mastering."—*The British Mail*.

"Everyone who has acquired any knowledge of French is ever ready to admit that, perfect as his accent and his knowledge of the *smells* of the language may be, its idioms are never mastered but by those who have for years lived on the other side of the Channel, and not even by many of these, although after a long study and an anxious desire to read, write, and speak French as well as they can their own mother tongue. M. Bue has indeed grappled, tooth and nail, with this difficulty, by giving as complete a method of instruction for the conquering of this difficulty that could possibly be prepared. So perfect is the grasp of his subject, that he will have the blessings of thousands for having enabled them to overcome an obstacle that has hitherto been deemed end pronounced to be insuperable."—*Bell's Weekly Messenger*.

## CLASS-BOOK OF COMPARATIVE IDIOMS.

**ENGLISH PART.** By **JULIUS BUT**, Honorary M.A. of Oxford; Taylorian Teacher of French, Oxford; Examiner in the Oxford Local Examinations from 1858; and **W. COLLETT SANDARS**, Taylorian Exhibitioner, Oxford. New Edition. 1 vol., small 8vo, cloth, 2s.

**FRENCH PART.** Exercices sur les Formes Idiomatiques Comparées. New Edition. Cloth, 2s.

**GERMAN PART.** By Professor **R. LENNHEIM**, late German Master to H.R.H. the Prince Imperial, and **Dr. WEHR**, First German Master. Dulwich College. Cloth, price 2s.

"A great improvement upon the old-fashioned conversation book which have tried the patience of generations of students. The idiomatic expressions in which the French and English languages abound are freely introduced into the dialogues, and the student has thus the opportunity of becoming easily acquainted with the principal points of difference between the two tongues."—*Public Opinion*.

"As a means for perfecting one's acquaintance with the idiomatic peculiarities both of English and French, and the difference of construction between them, the above volumes are the very best that could possibly be contrived. The rules are so simply stated that a mere child will easily comprehend them, and by fixing them, no less than the idioms themselves, in the memory, become thoroughly *au fait* as to conversation."—*Bell's Weekly Messenger*.

"The 'Class-Book of Comparative Idioms' recently issued by Messrs. Hachette is intended to supersede the ordinary dialogues which are so extensively used in schools at the present day. The French phrases and their English equivalents being printed in separate volumes, the reader will be able to employ with great advantage the materials thus placed within his reach, either for *viva voce* instruction or as subjects for written translations: and particular care has been taken to exclude obsolete, unusual, or slang expressions."—*Saturday Review*.

---

## LE VERBE "FAIRE."

A complete Glossary of the Idioms in which this verb occurs.

With Exercises.

By **L. P. BLOUET, B.A.,**

*French Master, St. Paul's School, London.*

1 vol., small 8vo, cloth. Price 2s.

There is no verb in French which enters into the construction of more gallicisms than the verbe **FAIRE**. It is the French verb *par excellence*. The French, in fact, use it in so many ways that foreigners must find great difficulty in understanding all its different meanings.

I have undertaken to collect as many gallicisms as possible in which the verbe **FAIRE** is employed, and with this object I have admitted not only those which occur in our classical authors, but also such as are used in popular and conversational language.

As the course of reading followed by students of French is naturally not confined to the works of Corneille and Racine, I think it is desirable to make them acquainted with those familiar expressions which they will constantly find in French books and newspapers, and will continually hear upon the stage.



Messrs. HACHETTE and Co. beg to announce that they have been appointed the exclusive Agents for the sale of the—

## New French Class Books,

By C. A. CHARDENAL, B.A.,  
*Bachelier-ès-Lettres of the University of France.*

*From the 1st of January, 1885, the different Volumes constituting this excellent series can only be obtained from them or from their Correspondents.*

---

The Series contains the following Volumes:—

**The French Primer.** For Junior Classes, in three parts, each 4d., or the same complete and bound in 1 vol., cloth. Price 1s. 3d.

**First French Course:** or, Rules and Exercises for Beginners. Used in Taylor Institution, Oxford; University College, London, etc. 212 pp., fcap., cloth. Price 1s. 6d.

From the *Athenæum*—"The information is well put, and the book as good a First Course as can be had."

**Second French Course:** or French Syntax and Reader. 240 pp., fcap., cloth. Price 2s.

From the *Athenæum*—"With the 'First French Course,' by the same Author, it may serve as a means of acquiring a sound knowledge of the language."

**French Exercises for Advanced Pupils.** Containing the principal Rules of French Syntax, numerous French and English Exercises on Rules and Idioms, and a Dictionary of nearly 4000 Idiomatical Verbs and Sentences, Familiar Phrases, and Proverbs. 320 pp., fcap., cloth. Price 3s. 6d.

**Key to the First and Second Courses.** Price 3s. 6d.

**Key to the "French Exercises for Advanced Pupils;"** to which are added Explanations of 850 of the most difficult French Idioms. Price 3s. 6d.

**The Rules of the French Language.** Being a Summary, set in Grammatical Order, of the Rules contained in the Author's *First French Course*, *Second French Course*, and *Advanced French Exercises*. 1 vol. small 8vo, 171 pages, cloth. Price 1s. 6d.

**Practical Exercises on French Conversation.** For the use of Students and Travellers. 1 vol. small 8vo, cloth. Price 1s. 6d.

# ADVANCED READERS.

## MODERN AUTHORS.

Carefully edited with English Notes, etc., by some of the most eminent French Masters in this country.

*(The Editors' Names are placed in Parenthesis.)*

---

**VOL. 1.—About.** La fille du Chanoine, la Mère de la Marquise (BRETTE et MASSON). Cloth, 2s.

**VOL. 2.—Lacombe, Paul.** Petite Histoire du Peuple Français (BUÉ, JULES). Cloth, 2s.

**VOL. 3.—Töpffer.** Histoire de Charles, Histoire de Jules (BRETTE). Cloth, 1s.

**VOL. 4.—Witt.** Derrière les Haies (DE BUSSY). Cloth, 2s.

**VOL. 5.—Villemain.** Lascaris (DUPUIS). Cloth 1s. 6d.

**VOL. 6.—Musset.** Pierre et Camille, Croisilles, etc. (MASSON). Cloth, 2s.

**VOL. 7.—Ponsard.** Le Lion Amoureux (DE CANDOLE). Cloth, 2s.

**VOL. 8.—Guizot.** Guillaume le Conquérant (DUBOURG). Cloth, 2s.

**VOL. 9.—Guizot.** Alfred le Grand (LALLEMAND). Cloth, 2s. 6d.

**VOL. 10.—Chateaubriand.** Aventures du dernier Abencerrage (ROULIER). Cloth, 1s.

**VOL. 11.—Scribe.** Bertrand et Raton (BUÉ, JULES). Cloth, 1s. 6d.

**VOL. 12.—Monnechese.** Lazare Hoche (BUÉ, HENRI). Cloth, 1s. 6d.

**VOL. 13.—Pressensé.** Rosa (MASSON). Cloth, 2s.

**VOL. 14.—Mérimée.** Colomba (BRETTE). Cloth, 2s.

**VOL. 15.—Maistre, Xavier, De.** Un Voyage autour de ma Chambre (BUÉ, JULES). Cloth, 1s.

**VOL. 16.—D'Aubigné.** Bayart (BUÉ, JULES). Cloth, 2s.

**VOL. 17.—Saintine.** Picciola. Book I. (BAUME.) Cloth, 1s.

**VOL. 18.—Saintine.** Picciola. Books II. and III. (BAUME.) Cloth, 1s. Vols. XVII. and XVIII. in one vol. complete, 1s. 6d.

A Vocabulary of some of the least familiar words in Picciola. By an English Head Master. Price 6d.

**VOL. 19.—Monnechese.** Bertrand Du Guesclin (BUÉ, JULES). Cloth, 2s.

ADVANCED READERS.—(Continued.)

---

- VOL. 20.—Lamartine, A. De.** Christophe Colomb (A. C. CALPIN). Cloth, 1s. 6d.
- VOL. 21.—Staël, Madame De.** Le Directoire (V. OGER). Cloth, 1s. 6d.
- The Key to a Series of Twelve Examination Papers set on Le Directoire, and a Translation of all the Quotations given in the Notes to Messrs. Hachette and Co.'s Edition, by VICTOR OGER. Price 1s. 6d.
- VOL. 22.—Dumas, A.** La Tulipe Noire (BLOUET, L. P.). Cloth, 1s. 6d.
- VOL. 23.—Bernardin de Saint-Pierre.** Paul et Virginie. (A. J. DUBOURE.) Cloth, 1s. 6d.
- VOL. 24.—Vigny, Alfred De.** Cinq-Mars (VICTOR OGER). Cloth, 2s. 6d. With the Notes, 8s. 6d. The Notes separately, 1s. 6d.
- VOL. 25.—Seuvestre.** Au Coin du Feu (H. LALLEMAND). Cloth, 1s. 6d.
- VOL. 26.—Enault, E.** Le Chien du Capitaine (HENRI BUE). Cloth, 1s. 6d.
- VOL. 27.—Witt, Madame De, née Guizot.** De Glacons en Glacons. A Story of Napoleon's Invasion of Russia (L. DELBOS). Cloth, 1s. 6d.
- VOL. 28.—Zeller, E.** Richelieu. Illustrated. (HENRI TESTARD.) Cloth 2s.
- VOL. 29.—Zeller, E.** Henri IV. et Marie de Médicis. Illustrated. (STEPHANE BARLET.) Cloth, 2s.
- VOL. 30.—Zeller, Jules.** François I. Illustrated. (GEORGE PETILLEAU.) Cloth, 2s.



